UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY
OU_158691
UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

GLIMPSES

INTO

OF INDIAN PLANTS

AN ELEMENTARY INDIAN BOTANY

J. Pfleiderer

MANGALORE

BASEL MISSION BOOK AND TRACT DEPOSITORY



GLIMPSES

INTO

THE LIFE OF INDIAN PLANTS

AN ELEMENTARY INDIAN BOTANY

BY

I. PFLEIDERER

MANGALORE

BASEL MISSION BOOK AND TRACT DEPOSITORY

1908

Copyright registered.

PRINTED AT THE BASEL MISSION PRESS, MANGALORE.

PREFACE

Some years ago I was asked by a number of friends in Mangalore to help them in the study of Botany. The promise given at that time led me to compile this little book, which, I hope, will rouse their interest in the life of plants they were so anxious to know.

At the same time I was prompted to come forward in writing a simple book on Indian Botany by the sad disappointment I felt when I witnessed the poor and lifeless way in which object-lessons on plants were taught in our elementary schools. I understood that, if any improvement in this subject was to be made, the teachers themselves had first to be interested in nature-study. And as a treatment of Botany in the old way could not secure the object in view, I adopted a course which I was glad to find in Dr. O. Schmeil's Manual of Botany, intended to open to any student of ordinary intelligence an understanding of plant-life and to enlarge and quicken in him a sense of that infinite harmony which runs through every part of the Creator's marvellous plan of nature, which would make the educational value of this subject equal to that of any other subject taught in schools.

To this end I combined the structural description of plants with a plain description of their vital processes. The technical terms, which so often form the crux of beginners, are reduced to the smallest number possible, and many statements are illustrated by suitable cuts. The illustrations may also be supplemented by the coloured plates of Indian Plants, published by the Basel Mission Book and Tract Depository, Mangalore, at a very moderate

price, to which reference is made in the text, wherever possible, and of which the 8 coloured pictures found in the book, are reduced reproductions.

I need hardly emphasize that in using this manual as a school-book the plants studied are to be put into the student's hand, and that the types described should, if the climate permits, be planted in a school garden for the continued observation of the various stages of their life. Many of them may, at least in the West Coast of India, be procured in any field, wood, or garden.

The book does not aim at completeness, which is not required in a school-book. Yet, the natural orders selected are systematically grouped and the characters of the various classes and divisions are briefly stated, so as to give the student at once an insight into the classification of the vegetable kingdom.

I have to acknowledge great indebtedness to MR. H. A. LATHAM, Deputy Conservator of Forests, at present in the Tinnevelly District, and to MR. V. SUBRAMANIA AIYAR, M.A., Instructor of the Imperial Forest College at Dehra Dun, who have both gone through the manuscripts and given me valuable hints in the compilation of the book. My thanks are also due to MR. P. GOPALAKRISHNA, who has drawn for me some of the best illustrations contained in the book.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

First Part: Description of Types and Orders pp. 1—147.

DIVISION I. FLOWERING PLANTS pp. 1—135.

Pages

Class 1.—Dicotyledons . . . . . 1—97

Sub-Class 1.—Choripetalæ pp. 1–47.

The Water Lily Family: The Lotus Water Lily 1
The Poppy Family: The Opium Poppy 4
The Crucifer Family: The Indian Mustard 8
The Cotton Family: The Indian Cotton 10
The Ladies' Fingers 11
The Orange Family: The Citron 14
The Mango Family: The Mango Tree 19
The Leguminosæ: The Garden Pea 25
The Indian Laburnum or Pudding Pipe Tree. . . . 34
The Babul Acacia 35
The Rose Family: The Rose 36
The Myrtle Family: The Jamoon 39
The Cucumber Family: The Cucumber 43

Sub-Class 2.—Sympetalæ pp. 47—82.

The Coffee Family: The Coffee Tree 47
The Composite Family: The Sunflower 51
The Jasmine Family: The Jasmine 57
The Dogbane Family: The Rose Periwinkle 58
The Milkweed Family: The Madar 61
The Bindweed Family 63
The Nightshade Family: The Potato 64
The Tobacco. 67
The Butterwort Family: The Bladderwort 70
The Sesamum Family: The Gingelly 73
The Acanthus Family 74
The Labiate Family: The Tumbe Plant 74
The Verbena Family: The Teak Tree 78

Sub-Class 3.—Monochlamydeæ pp. 83—97.

The Nettle and Fig Family: The Banyan Tree 83
The Spurge Family: The Castor Oil Plant 89
The Laurel Family: The Cinnamon Tree 93
The Pepper Family: The Pepper Vine. 96

Pages

Class 2. — Monocotyledons . . . . . 98—135

The Palm Family: The Cocoanut Palm 98
The Arum Family: The Kesu Plant 107
The Lily Family: The Gloriosa 110
The Amaryllis Family: The Asiatic Crinum 114
The American Aloe 115
The Orchid Family: The Round-leaved Habenaria 117
The Ginger and Banana Family: The Ginger Plant 121
The Banana Tree 123
The Grass Family: The Rice Plant 125
Maize 132
Sugarcane 132
The Pine Family 135

DIVISION II. FLOWERLESS PLANTS pp. 136—147.

Ferns: The climbing Maidenhair Fern 136
Mosses 139
Mushrooms and Moulds 142

Second Part: The Structure and Life of Plants pp. 148—189.

DIVISION I. THE MINUTE STRUCTURE AND VITAL PROCESSES OF PLANTS pp. 148—150.

I. — The single Cell . . . . . 148—149
II. — The organic Structure 150

DIVISION II. THE STRUCTURE AND VITAL PROCESSES OF THE PARTS OF PLANTS pp. 151—189.

1. — The Leaf . . . . . 151—165

A. **The outer structure:** Parts of a leaf 151; arrangement of the ribs 151; form 152; margin 152; division 153; insertion in the stem 153.

B. **The work done by the leaf:**

1. Transpiration of Water: Proof of the fact that plants evaporate water 154; way of transpiration 154; importance 155; amount 155; helps to promote transpiration 156; means to check excessive transpiration 157.

2. Assimilation of Food: Absorption of carbonic acid 158; only the green parts absorb carbonic acid 160; the presence of sunshine required 160; the inner structure of the leaf: chlorophyll and the process of assimilation 161; the substances formed by assimilation 162.

3. Respiration or Breathing of Oxygen: Proof of the fact that plants breathe 163; necessity of breathing 163; ways for breathing 164.

2.—The Root . . . . . pp. 165—168

1. The chief uses: they fix the plant in the earth, and suck up moisture as food and drink 165.

2. The structure: tap-roots and side-roots 165; root-hairs 165; growth of roots 167; manuring and rotation of crops 167.

3. Peculiar kinds of roots: fibrous 167; thickened tap-roots 168; adventitious, aërial, parasitical roots 168.

3.—The Stem . . . . . pp. 168—173

1. Stems as means to spread out the leaves and flowers to the air and the sun: stems rise up, herbs, shrubs, trees, climbers 169.

2. Stems as channels for the ascending and the descending sap: the inner structure of dicotyledonous and monocotyledonous stems 170; the circulation of the fluids 171.

3. Stems as stores for food in reserve: woody stems 172; underground stems 173.

4.—The Flower . . . . . pp. 173—183

***A.* The parts of the flower.**

1. The floral covers: calyx and corolla 174.

2. The inner organs of reproduction: stamens and pistil 176.

***B.* The function of the flower:** Pollination pp. 178—183.

1. Various provisions for cross-pollination 178.

2. Pollination by the agency of insects: what the plants can offer to their guests 179; how they attract them by colours 180, inflorescences 181, scents 182.

3. Pollination by the agency of the wind 183.

5.—The Fruit and the Seed . . . . . pp. 183—189

***A.* How the fruits are formed:** the covering 183; the seed 184.

***B.* How the fruits allow their seeds to escape:** dry fruits that open naturally 185; dry fruits that do not open 186; fleshy fruits 186.

***C.* How the seeds are dispersed:** by mechanical contrivances 187; by water 188; by the wind 188; by animals and birds 188.

***D.* How the seeds produce new plants** . . . . . p. 189

Appendix.

1. Nomenclature and classification 191.

2. Distribution 192.

FIRST PART.

DESCRIPTION OF TYPES AND ORDERS.

DIVISION I.

FLOWERING PLANTS (Phanerogamæ).

All plants in this division have stamens and pistils, and form seeds.

CLASS I.—DICOTYLEDONS.

Plants with 2 seed-leaves. Leaves net-veined. Parts of flower usually in sets of 5 or 4. Stems, if woody, consisting of a woody substance growing in circles round a central pith, and surrounded on the outside by the bark.

SUB-CLASS 1.—CHORIPETALÆ.

Plants generally with 2 floral envelopes: calyx and corolla. Petals separated from one another.

1. Order: The Water Lily Family.

(Nymphæaceæ.)

Aquatic herbs. Petals and stamens numerous.

The Lotus Water Lily *(Nymphœa lotus).*

(Plate No. 623.)

(*Can.* Naidile, Tāvare. *Mal.* Veḷḷānpal, Nīrāmpal. *Tam.* Veḷḷāmbal, Indiravāčam. *Tel.* Allikāḍa. *San.* Sītōtpala.)

Many quiet tanks and peaceful lakes are adorned by the beautiful Lotus flower. The broad leaves spreading over the surface of the water like floating shields, and the lovely flowers like large white floating lilies, increase the mysterious charm

that all still waters possess in the sunshine. No wonder, many myths have arisen about this plant, and that it is almost worshipped by many nations. Most plants soon die, if their roots and stems are kept under water. Not so the Lotus; for it lives there, and its structure is wonderfully adapted to a life in such surroundings.

1. The **Stem** is thick and tuber-like, with many scars which show where the leaves formerly grew. It sends down stout, long roots into the soft mud so that it may not be carried away by any movements of the water in which it grows.

2. From the stem rise the long-stalked **Leaves**, which so long as they are below the surface are rolled up with their edges inward. As soon as the leaves reach the surface the stalk ceases to grow, and the leaves unroll their broad blades for the sun and air to play on. To these, like all other green plants, the Lotus must have access in order to feed and breathe. When the water rises to a higher level, the stalks stand vertically; when the level sinks lower, they move more and more sidewards, like the ribs of an umbrella which is opened.

If one of the leaves is torn off the stem, it will float. This is due to air-chambers in the stalk, which can be easily seen if the long stalk is cut across (fig. 1). The chambers contain bristles which serve as a means of protection against the voracious water-snails, which would otherwise feed on the leaf-stalk and so destroy the leaves.

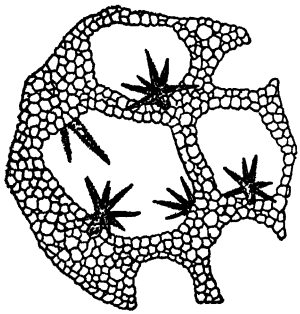


Fig. 1.— Transverse section of the leaf stalk of the Water-lily, with large air-chambers and bristles within.

The upper side of the leaves is covered with a wax-like substance, so that any water which may fall on them runs off, as it would from a duck's back. We may also notice that the middle of the leaf where the stalk joins it, is a little higher than its edges, which are slightly waved. This helps the water to run off. If the water were to remain on the leaves, it would hinder the growth of the plant by stopping up the little

holes (stomata) through which the plant breathes and absorbs carbon dioxide, a gas which, with the aid of water, the plant is able in the sunlight to turn into starch and thus gain the carbon which forms an essential element in all plants.—The openings in land plants are most numerous on the lower side of the leaves, but in the Lotus they are on the top, because the lower side of the leaf rests on the water, and they would be of no use on that side. Put the blade of a leaf under water and blow down the stalk, and you will soon see little silvery bubbles form on the top-side of the leaf: this is the air escaping through the stomata.

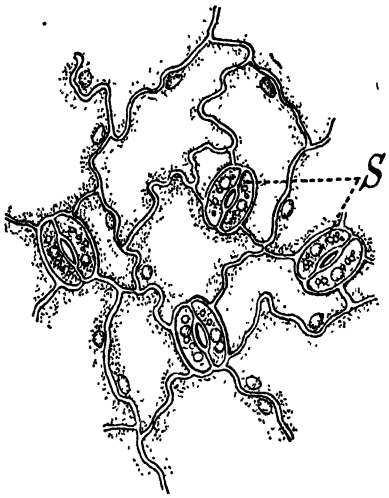


Fig. 2. — Part of the epidermis of a leaf (200 times enlarged). *S.* Stomata.

Another point about the leaves is worthy of notice: the lower side is of a darker colour than the upper, the reason for this being that dark coloured things absorb heat better than light coloured ones. (A black coat is much hotter in the sun than a white one.) Now the heat rays which accompany the light rays from the sun would pass through the leaves into the water, if they were bright green throughout; but the violet colour absorbs the heat rays and thus assists the growth of the plant. Increase of heat causes quicker growth.

When the tank in which the Lotus grows dries up, the leaves with their long stalks sink down in the mud and perish. The plant, however, does not die with the leaves. For, when the tank is filled with water again, the root-stock (stem) which was hidden in the mud begins to sprout again: the plant is perennial.

3. The **Flower** also floats on the surface of the water at the end of a long stalk. The four green sepals form a good protection to the tender bud on its journey to the top, and as

soon as it arrives there the sepals open out looking like small boats. Their inner side is the same colour as the petals. These latter are very numerous and grow in a spiral, gradually becoming smaller towards the centre and at the same time turning into stamens (fig. 3, 2). In the centre is the ovary or seed-box bearing a shield-like sessile stigma.

The flowers open after sunrise and are visited by insects which are attracted by the colour. They, however, only find pollen, as the plant secretes no honey. Towards evening the flower closes again to protect the delicate stigma and the pollen from damp and cold.

4. The **Fruit,** a capsule (Fig. 3, 4) ripens below the surface of the water. When the seeds are ripe and leave the berry, a small bubble of air, attached to them, brings them to the surface, and the seeds are carried wherever the wind and waves take them until the bubble bursts, when the seed being heavier than water sinks to the bottom, and then begins to grow to form a new plant which may be at some distance from the parent one. In this simple way the Lotus plant is enabled to spread.

Other Water Lilies.

The Sacred Lotus of India is *Nelumbium speciosum* (Sanskrit: Padmā). The funnel shaped leaves and the large rosy flowers are raised over the surface of the water. The root-stock and the seeds are eaten.

2. Order: The Poppy Family.

(Papaveraceæ.)

Herbs with milky juice. Sepals 2, petals 4, stamens many.

The Opium Poppy *(Papaver somniferum).*

(*Can.* Kasakase. *Mal.* Kaçakaça. *Tam.* Gasagasā. *Tel.* Gasagasa.)

The Opium Poppy is widely cultivated in India, because it yields "*opium*", which is an important article of commerce. Opium is a valuable drug which can soothe the greatest pain

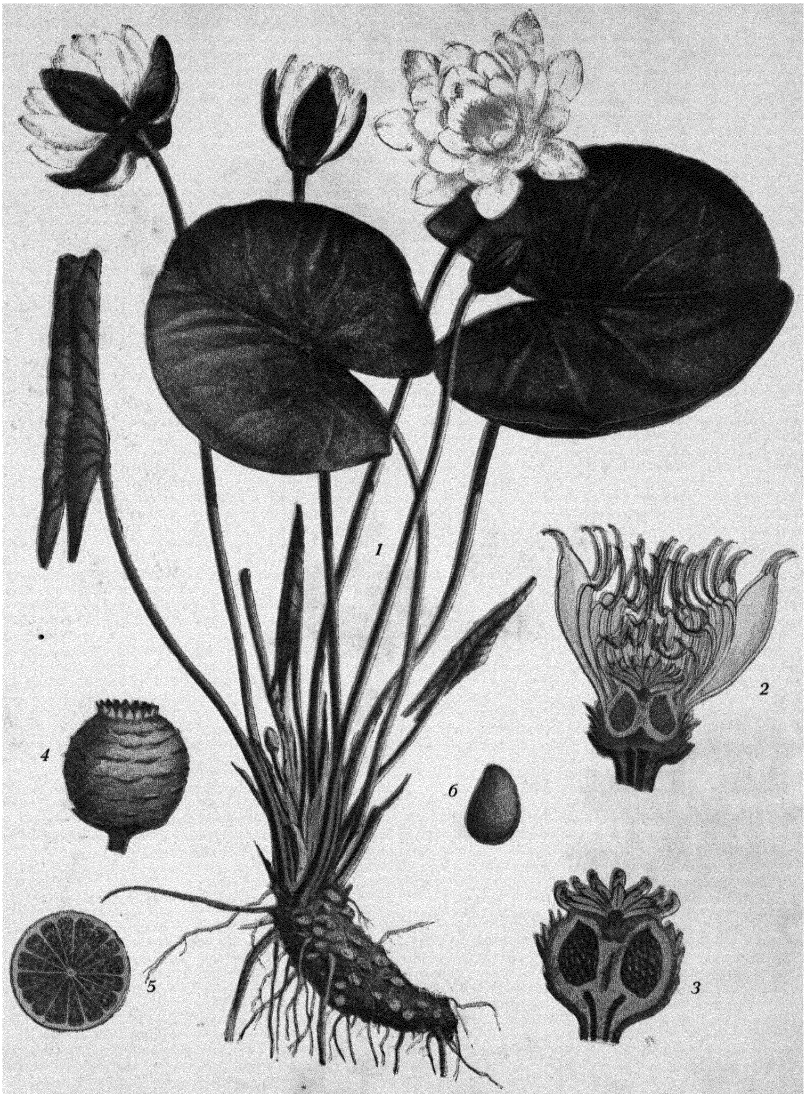


Fig. 3. — WATER LILY *(Nymphœa lotus)*.

2. Vertical section of flower. 3. Vertical section of ovary. 4. Capsule.
5. Transverse section of it. 6. Seed.

and cause sleep. It is obtained by scratching the unripe capsules (fruits) with a small knife. The milky juice which comes out is allowed to dry and is then scraped off the capsule. In China this substance is smoked in a pipe for intoxicating purposes. The opium smoker soon sinks into a half conscious state in which pleasant dreams come to him. On waking up again he is, however, very dull, suffers from headache and so on; and in order to get rid of the discomfort he again indulges in a smoke. To take effect, after a time, the dose must be increased, and this slowly but surely undermines the health of the smoker until he sinks into an untimely grave.

1. The **Stem** and **Leaves** have a bluish coat of wax on them, which, as we have seen in the case of the Lotus plant, serves as a means of protection against the choking up of the little breathing holes (stomata) by rain water. The leaves near the root are larger than those higher up. If it were not so, the upper leaves would prevent the sunshine from falling on the lower ones and make them useless for making starch. The upper leaves also lie closer to the stem: this serves the same purpose. Besides, by having the large leaves low down, the stem does not have to be so strong, and the leaves also afford shelter to the root and keep the soil there damper than if they grew at a height from the ground.

If the stem is wounded, a milky juice comes out. This dries and hardens and so protects the tender cells inside from further injury. The juice also gives the whole plant a peculiar smell and taste, which animals do not like and so prevents them from feeding on the leaves.

2. The **Flowers,** when in bud, have a calyx of two green sepals. These drop as soon as the flower opens, and the petals, which were crumpled up inside, open out and become quite smooth, and the flower with its four large, shining, white petals becomes very conspicuous. This plant, too, secretes no honey, but is visited by insects for the sake of the pollen which they eat and which is produced abundantly on the numerous stamens. Whilst eating they scatter the pollen dust about, covering themselves. The scattered pollen is caught by the large shell-shaped petals and kept ready for the

next insect visitor. The upright position of the flower also helps to prevent the pollen from being spilt and wasted on the ground.

The petals are too weak to carry the weight of the heavy insects that come to visit the flower; another resting place is, therefore, provided, namely the broad rayed stigma that spreads over the ovary like a shield. The insects which have visited other poppies and got covered with pollen alight here and naturally drop some of the pollen-grains, thus fertilising the ovules or future seeds in the ovary (fig. 4, 4).

3. If the **Fruit** is cut across (fig. 4, 3), the structure is easily seen. There are numerous walls inside which, however, do not join in the centre, and it is on these walls that the seeds grow until they are ripe when they drop off into the space between the walls. In order to let them escape from the capsule (as the fruit is called), little windows open all round the top just below the stigma (fig. 4, 5), and if the plant is shaken by the wind, the tiny seeds are thrown about in all directions. Bend down one of the ripe capsules and let it go, and you will see what happens. We now see also why the stalk is tall and springy, as the higher the seeds are from the ground the further will they be scattered.

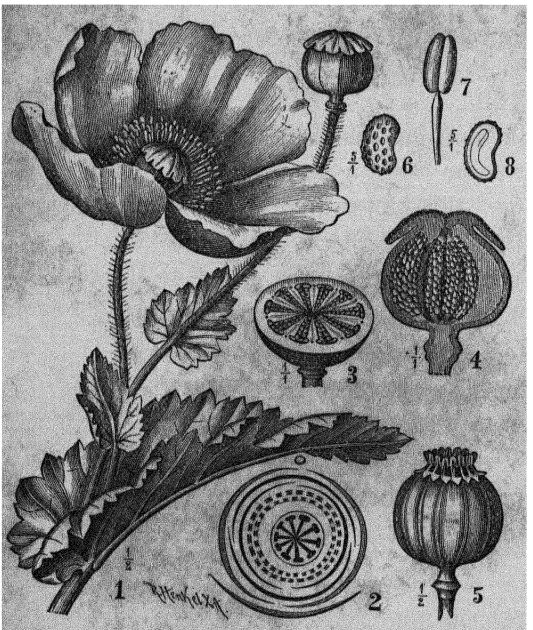


Fig. 4.—1. Opium Poppy *(Papaver somniferum)*. 2. Diagram of flower. 3. Transverse and 4. vertical section of ovary. 5. Ripe capsule. 6. and 8. Seed. 7. Stamen.

Other Poppies.

The Mexican Poppy (*Argemone mexicana*) is a well-known weed with prickly leaves and a yellow juice in all its parts. Oil for lamps is extracted from the seeds, which are purgative.



Fig. 5. — Corn Poppy *(Papaver Rhœas)*.

The Corn Poppy (*Papaver Rhœas*) is sometimes grown in gardens for its beautiful scarlet flowers. For the farmer the Corn Poppy is a pest, for it robs the corn of nourishment, light and space.

3. Order: The Crucifer or Mustard Family.

(Cruciferæ.)

Flowers with 4 sepals and 4 petals, arranged crosswise. Stamens 6, the two outer shorter, and the four inner longer. Fruit a pod, divided into 2 valves by a central frame to which the seeds adhere.

The Indian Mustard *(Brassica juncea).*

(Compare Rape, Plate No. 625.)

(*Can.* Sāsive. *Mal.* Kaḍuka. *Tam.* Kaḍugu. *Tel.* Āvālu. *San.* Sarshapah. Raktajāji, Dundubha.)

If you bruise some Mustard seeds between two pieces of paper, a grease spot is left on the paper. This is due to the presence of a fatty oil in the seed. Some plants, like the Rose and "Tulasi", have another kind of oil in their leaves which does not cause a grease spot but vanishes quickly. This kind of oil is called a "volatile" oil and is generally the cause of the scent in flowers. The "fatty" oil serves as a food for the young seedling.

The Mustard seed has also a volatile oil which is very pungent and will cause tears to come to the eyes. It is this oil which protects the seed from being eaten by birds, and which makes the seed useful to us as a condiment or medicine, and it is for the oils in its seeds that the plant is so commonly grown.

1. The **Stem** grows to a height of 4 or 5 feet and is very much branched.

2. As in the Poppy, the **Leaves** gradually become smaller as they grow higher up the stem. In this case, though, the upper leaves have quite a different shape from those which grow at the bottom: the upper leaves have no stalks and are long-narrow and toothed, whereas the latter have long stalks and are lyrate, that is, are lobed and have the end lobe larger than the others. (The leaves of Rape are stem-clasping which those of Mustard are not: see Rape, Plate No. 625.)—The leaves, too, point upwards, and if you watch the rain falling on them or

pour water on them, you will see that the water is taken to the stem and runs down to the root.

3. The **Root** system of the Mustard plant, instead of spreading to a distance in all directions like that of, for instance, the Mango tree, forms a distinct tap-root with a few thin side-roots only. It is for this reason that in the Mustard plant the leaves carry the water to the centre of the root system.

4. The **Flowers** of the Mustard plant are bright yellow and have four sepals and four petals. The latter are stalked and grow inside but alternate with the sepals. There are six stamens, 2 with short filaments, and 4 (inside) with longer ones (fig. 6).



Fig. 6.—Flower of Mustard (*Brassica juncea*). One sepal and two petals are removed. (3 times natural size.)

The bright colour of the flowers, which open at the same time in large numbers on the plant, attracts the passing insects to look for the honey which is there at the base of the stamens, and in doing so they pay for the kindness of the flower in providing them such a nice drink by spilling pollen on the stigma of the style and so fertilising the seeds.

5. The **Fruit** is a long erect pod formed of two dry carpels which split upwards and outwards from the base showing the seeds growing on a central frame (fig. 7). Such a pod is called a silique.

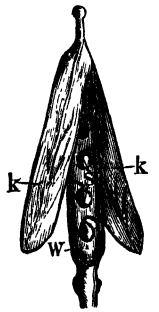


Fig. 7.—Silique of the Mustard plant. *k*. Carpels. *W*. Central frame. *S*. Seeds. (Natural size.)

Other Crucifers.

The order to which the Mustard plant belongs contains a very large number of plants in cool climates, but there are not many genera of this order in India. It takes its name from the crosswise arrangement of the different parts of the flower. Amongst representatives of the order we may mention the Radish (*Raphanus sativus*, Plate No. 625, 7. 8), the swollen root of which is eaten;

the Rape or Coleseed (*Brassica napus*, Plate No. 625, 1—6), from the seeds of which oil is made, and Cabbage (*Brassica oleracea*) from which by cultivation all the varieties of cabbage, cauliflower and knolkohl have been produced.

4. Order: The Mallow and Cotton Family.

(Malvaceæ.)

Flowers showy with each 5 sepals and petals. Stamens many united into a tube or a column from the sides of which numerous filaments spring.

The Indian Cotton *(Gossypium herbaceum)*.

(Plate No. 629.)

(*Can.* Araḷe, Hatti. *Mal.* Karuparutti. *Tam.* Parutti. *Tel.* Patti. *San.* Kārpāsah.)

Several varieties of Cotton are cultivated in India, which are probably referable to 3 main species:—*a)* The Tree Cotton (*Gossypium arboreum*), *b)* the American Cotton (*G. Barbadense*), and *c)* the Herbaceous Cotton (*G. herbaceum*).

1. The Herbaceous Cotton is a perennial and bushy shrub in the warmer areas, and annual where the cold weather being severe kills the plants. The stems are erect, the branches spreading, and the leaves pale green, thick, leathery, half segmented into 3, 5 to 7 broad lobes, and alternately arranged on the stem. In their axils the **Flower** buds grow and are protected not only by the calyx but also by three large heart-shaped bracts (Plate 629, 4). The five large petals are bright yellow, usually rendered more conspicuous by being coloured dark purple at their base. The numerous stamens, so combined with the petals that they form a tube covering the ovary and the style (fig. 8, 3), produce large quantities of yellow pollen-dust for the insects to feed on. The long style grows through the tube, formed by the stamens, and bears five stigmas above everything else, and they are therefore in the best position to catch the pollen brought by insects from

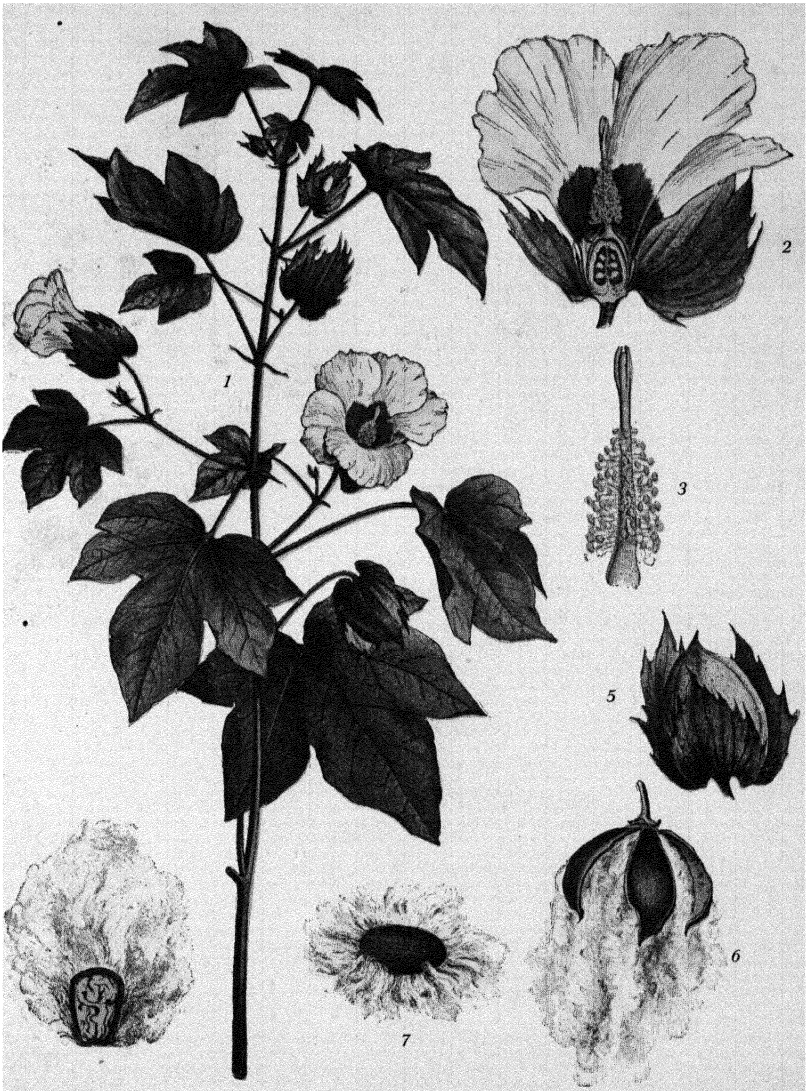


Fig. 8. — Herbaceous Cotton *(Gossypium herbaceum)*.

2. Vertical section of flower. 3. Monadelphous stamens. 5. Unripe capsule. 6. Ripe capsule. 7. Seed. 8. Section of seed.

any other flower they have visited. Without pollen the fruit will not set, and the plant will not bear any seed.

2. The **Fruit** is a dry capsule (fig. 8, 5) which divides into three parts, when ripe, showing the long white fibres in which the seed is protected (fig. 8, 6). These fibres are "cotton" and are intended to enable the wind to carry the seed to a distance. It is on account of these fibres that the plant is so largely cultivated in almost all tropical countries. The cotton is gathered by hand, dried in the sun, passed through a gin to remove the seeds and then pressed by machinery into very hard bales. The bales are sent to the mills, where the cotton is spun into thread and woven into cloth.

3. The cotton plant is also **useful** in various other respects. The stems of the plant yield a good fibre. The seeds (fig. 8, 7 and 8) are in many parts of India thrown away as a useless article. But they can be given to cattle, especially to milch cows, to increase the flow of their milk, for they contain an oil which is nourishing.

"The superior cottons belong to the *Gossypium arboreum,* and these should be cultivated more largely than the *G. herbaceum,* which is at present the staple of Indian produce" (Mukerji, *Handbook of Indian Agriculture*).

Other Mallows.

Many other Indian plants belong to this order, as the Ladies' Fingers (*Hibiscus esculentus*), the Shoeflower (*H. rosa-sinensis*) fig. 9, the Portia Tree (*Thespesia populnea*), the Red Silk Cotton Tree (*Bombax malabaricum*) and the White Silk Cotton Tree (*Eriodendron anfractuosum*).

The "Ladies' Fingers" (*Hibiscus esculentus*).

(*Can.* Beṇḍekāyi. *Mal.* Veṇḍa. *Tam.* Veṇḍa. *Tel.* Beṇḍekāya. *San.* Pātali, Nētrāçcōtana.)

An annual plant, cultivated for the fruit which is eaten as a vegetable.

1. The **Leaves** and all other parts of the plant are covered with bristles as a protection. The radical leaves (at the root of the plant) differ in some respects from those growing higher up. They are large, not lobed, and the long stalks hold them away from the stem;

those growing on the stem are smaller, five-lobed, and more or less upright, forming an acute angle with the stem. The advantages that the plant derives from these differences are:

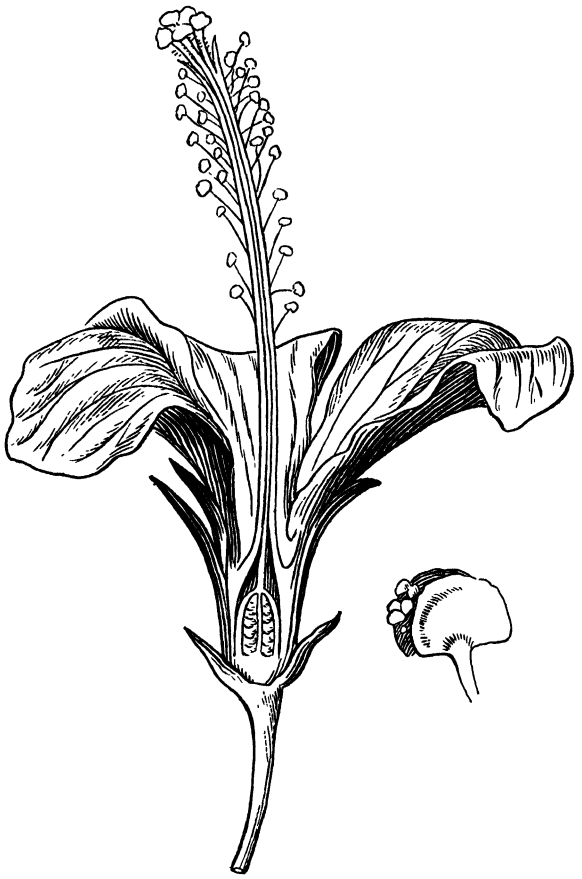


Fig. 9. — Longitudinal section of Shoeflower *(Hibiscus rosa-sinensis)*. Natural size. To the right a single stamen.

a) The upper *and* the lower leaves get a fair share of sunlight, as the lower ones project further than the upper ones.

b) The smaller leaves, being above the roots and stem, have not to withstand so much pressure from the wind as they would have to, if they were as large as the radical leaves.

c) It is important for the plant to grow big leaves first, because they are able to make more starch, without which the rest of the stem could not be made.

2. The **Flowers** that rise out of the axils of the leaves are pale-yellow with a dark crimson centre. In the bud the petals are twisted, thus helping the calyx to protect the stamens and the ovary. The stamens are united as in the flower of the cotton plant, and similarly enclose, with their column, the ovary which,

after fertilisation, grows into a large capsule with 5 to 8 partitions, filled with numerous seeds. Before they are ripe the capsules contain a slimy juice and are very nutritious.

3. When ripe, the **Capsule** splits from the tip in order to let the seeds escape. It would, however, be of little use if the seeds simply dropped, as the young plants would then all grow in a cluster at the place where the parent plant had grown and would be too close to one another to develop properly. They must, therefore, be scattered, and it is in order to make this easy that the capsules grow nearly vertically and on a tall stem. For the wind can then beat the capsules against the stem and the seeds get thrown out sideways.

Allied Orders:

The **Tea-shrub** (*Camellia theifera,* Plate No. 624—*Can.* Čāgiḍa; *Mal.* Čāyaččaḍi; *Tam.* Thay-ila) belongs to the order of *Ternstræmiaceæ.* It is found wild in the jungles of Assam, but is extensively grown on the slopes of the Himalayas, the Nilgiris, and in Ceylon. It has leathery, shining leaves of a dark-green colour with toothed edges which reflect the hot rays of the sun and thus keep the tree cool. It flowers all through the year and bears beautiful white flowers with 5 or more large petals and numerous yellow stamens, adhering partly to the base of the petals and partly to the ovary Plate No. 624, 2. 3). When ripe, the woody capsule opens in such a way (Plate No. 624, 7) that each of the 3 carpels splits in the middle, letting thus the seeds escape.



Fig. 10. Flowering branch of the Tea-shrub *(Camellia theifera).*

The part from which the beverage "tea" is made are the leaf buds. For the volatile oil which is the cause of the flavour of tea and an alkaloid, called "theine", which has a soothing effect on the nerves, are contained in the leaf buds more than in any other part of the plant. These leaves are picked carefully from the shrubs, partly dried in the sun or by machinery, rolled, and finally roasted to complete the drying. Of these dried leaves an infusion is made with boiling water, and this has the same flavour and odour as the tea leaves themselves; if allowed to stand for a long time, the infusion (tea) becomes spoiled, because a substance, called tannin, which is very astringent and is injurious to the digestion, is dissolved. Tea must, therefore, be taken soon after the infusion is made.

The **Chocolate Tree** (*Theobroma cacao*, Plate No. 627) belongs to the order of *Sterculiaceæ* which is nearly allied to this family. It was introduced into India from tropical America. Its gourdlike fruits contain, in their sour pulp, very bitter seeds, the so-called Cacao-beans (fig. 11, 3 4). These are cleaned, husked, roasted, and powdered, and then become Cacao or Cocoa, which, mixed with sugar and seasoned with Vanilla, makes Chocolate.

Another allied order are the *Tiliaceæ*, of which we mention the **Jute** (*Corchorus capsularis*). This shrub is largely cultivated in Bengal for its fibre which is manufactured into coarse fabrics, such as gunny-bags, the common coarse bags, in which the various grains are sent to market.

5. Order: The Orange Family.

(Rutaceæ.)

Trees and shrubs, with alternate leaves dotted with transparent glands. Sepals and petals 4 or 5; stamens joined at their base into various groups.

The Citron (*Citrus medica*).

(Plate No. 630.)

(*Can.* Mādavāḷa. *Mal.* Māduḷaṅgam. *Tam.* Mādiphalamu. *San.* Mātulaṅga.)

The fruit of this tree is a berry with about 10 divisions under the cover of a thick leathery skin which, in its outer part, con-

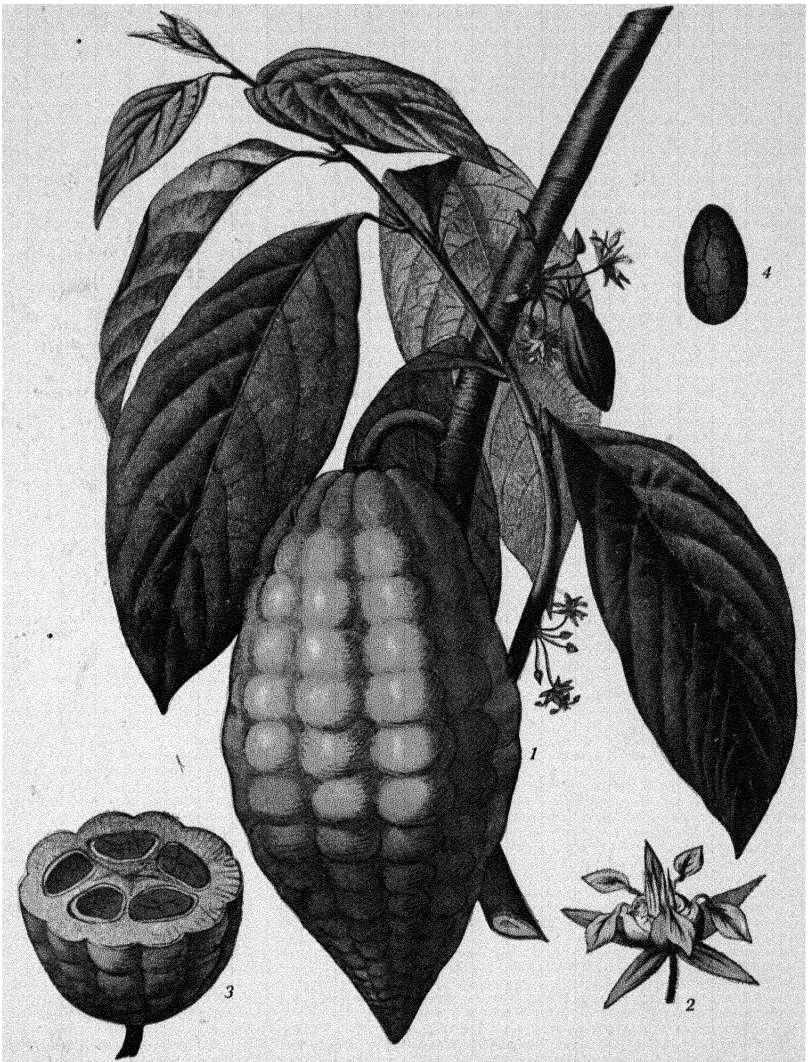


Fig. 11. — CHOCOLATE TREE *(Theobroma cacao)*.

2. Flower. 3. Transverse section of fruit. 4. Seed.

tains numerous glands of aromatic oil (Plate No. 630, s. 4). The pulp in which the few seeds lie is sour. The aromatic skin as well as the sour pulp are much prized.

The fruits grow in the leaf axils of evergreen shrubs or small trees. Their leaves are alternate and elliptical and have serrate edges. If you crumple them, they smell strongly; for they are filled with that volatile oil which we have already noticed in the skin of the fruit. Hold a leaf up to the light, and you see its whole blade dotted with oil glands. The leaves are leathery and shining like those of the Mango tree, which accounts for their being evergreen.

The white and fragrant flowers consist of a cup-shaped, five-toothed calyx, a corolla with 5 fleshy petals which soon drop after unfolding, and numerous stamens whose broad filaments are joined into various bundles round the pistil (fig. 2 of plate No. 630).

From *Citrus medica* various varieties have been produced by cultivation, so the Lemon (*Citrus medica var. limonum*), the Sweet Lime (*C. med. var. limetta*), and the Sour Lime (*C. med. var. acida*).

Other plants belonging to this order are the Orange (*Citrus aurantium*), the Pummelo (*C. decumana*), and the Bael tree (*Aegle marmelos*).

There are various plants, belonging to allied orders, which cannot be fully described here, but deserve a passing notice.

To the *Lineæ* belongs the Common **Flax Plant** (*Linum usitatissimum* — *Can.* Atasi; *Tam.* Aliviral; *San.* Atasi). This is cultivated throughout India for the oil contained in its seeds (Linseed oil), and also for the fibres of its stem. The slender stems bear alternate small leaves and blue, pretty flowers, collected at the ends of the branches (fig. 11). The flowers are composed of 5 sepals, 5 petals, 5 stamens (united at their base), and 5 styles. The fruit is a round capsule, containing 2 oily seeds in each of its 5 parts.

The fibres of the inner bark or liber of the stem are very tough and can, therefore, be used for textile fabrics. To get the fibres, the

plants are first stripped of their seeds and then steeped in water until partially rotted, when the gummy part of the stem will be dissolved and the fibres loosened. Next, to separate the woody portion of the stem, they are spread to dry and then "broken",



Fig. 11. Common Flax *(Linum usitatissimum).*
a. Flowerbud. *b.* Flower. *c.* Stamens and pistil. *d.* Ripe capsule.

by which process the wood inside becomes brittle and breaks into pieces. The fibres are then drawn through a comb, called the heckle, where they are straightened and freed from dust and other matters. The fibre, which is thus gained, has a fine, silky appearance, and is spun into yarn, and finally woven into linen cloth in the loom.

Other plant fibres, generally used as material for clothing, are those of Cotton (which see, p. 10), Hemp, and Jute (p. 14). The fibres of many other plants are similarly used but only locally, as those of Sunn Hemp (*Crotalaria juncea*), American Aloe (*Agave americana*), Bowstring Hemp (*Sanseviera zeylanica*), Manilla Hemp (*Musa textilis*), etc.

To the *Geraniaceæ* belong the following:—

The **Bilimbi Tree** (*Averrhoa bilimbi*—*Can.* Bilimbi; *Mal.* Vilumbi; *Tam.* Pilimbi; *Hind.* Tamarung). It grows in the yards of many houses and bears plantain-like fruits on its trunk. Its leaves are sensitive like those of many leguminous plants: they fold at night.

The Garden **Balsam** (*Impatiens balsamina*) is a very common plant during the monsoon, and its habits are characteristic of such plants as live in very moist places. The stalk and leaves are succulent, tender and covered with a bluish coat of wax (see page 5, 1). Under the tuft of leaves at the top there grow the spurred pink flowers as under a protecting roof. If you pluck the pretty flowers for a flower-bouquet, they fade very soon. As the plant grows at a time while, and in places where, water can be obtained plentifully, it is not furnished with those means which tend to check the evaporation of the sap in the plant so much required by plants living on dry soil (such as a thick epidermis, small leaf-blades, hairy surface, etc.). So it cannot remain fresh without water and soon fades when plucked. If we touch its ripe seed-vessels, they burst with great force and cast the seeds far away as by an elastic spring. The same happens, if the wind shakes the plants.

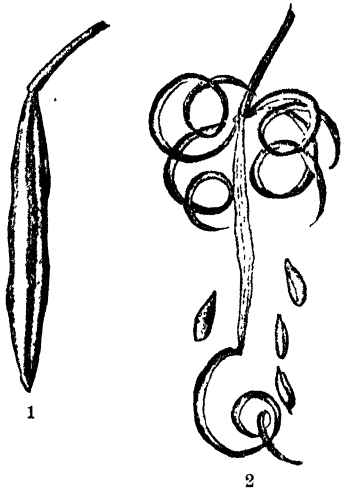


Fig. 12.—Capsule of a Balsam.
1. When closed. 2. Exploding.

A very common tree, whose bark and leaves are in repute as medicines, is the **Neem** or **Margosa Tree** (*Melia indica*), also belonging to an allied order, the *Meliaceæ*.

Of the Vine Family (*Ampelideæ*) we mention

The **Grape Vine** (*Vitis vinifera*—*Can.* Drākshe). This is a weak shrub which, with the help of tendrils growing opposite the leaves, seeks support on other plants and climbs up to the light. It is cultivated in some parts of India and produces the sweet, juicy grapes which are praised as the best fruits of the whole vegetable kingdom. They are eaten as fresh dessert grapes, or as dried raisins. The chief use, however, of this plant is the wine made of its grapes. For the preparation of wine the grapes are first expressed. The sweet juice, thus obtained, soon becomes cloudy; for innumerable germs begin to work in it. These germs live in the soil of the vineyard and are by the wind blown on the skin of the grapes, and thus come also into the juice of the grapes. Here they grow and reproduce themselves rapidly, and cause an important process in the liquid, called fermentation. Two new substances are formed in it, namely alcohol and carbonic acid gas which from time to time bursts in bubbles and escapes. By this process the sweet juice is gradually changed into alcoholic wine. This drink has a stimulating effect on the nerves, if taken in small quantities. Its abuse, however, is very injurious to health and is the source of much misery. For children wine is always injurious, even if taken in very small quantities.—Another species of this genus is *Vitis quadrangularis* (*Can.* Sandubaḷḷi; *Mal.* Čaṅalamparanda; *Tam.* Ārugani; *Tel.* Vajravaḷḷi). It is common in hedges and, though a poor-looking and scraggy plant, is typical of the order. Its fleshy, cactus-like, jointed stems point to its habitat in dry regions.



Fig. 13. — Branch of Grape Vine (*Vitis vinifera*) with grapes.

6. Order: The Mango Family.

(Anacardiaceæ.)

Trees or shrubs, often with milky or acrid juice; sepals, petals, and stamens generally 4 or 5.

The Mango Tree *(Mangifera indica).*

(Plate in preparation.)

(*Can.* Māvu. *Mal.* Māvu. *Tam.* Mā. *Tel.* Māvi. *San.* Čūtah, Āmrah.)

This tree grows all over India and is not only one of her stateliest trees, but also produces one of her best fruits.

1. The **Trunk** of the tree is covered by a dark-grey, cracked bark, when old. The young plant, to be sure, has a green outer skin, called epidermis, like annual herbs. But as the tree grows larger, the epidermis, not being able to stretch, bursts. It is now necessary for the plant to form a new protective cover, which is done by constantly forming air and water-tight layers of what are called *cork* cells. Some trees form a very thick layer of cork, like the Andipunar tree (*Carallia integerrima*), or the Spanish oak, the bark of which is the ordinary cork which is sold in shops. If the cork is thin, the stems have a smooth surface like the Guava, or the Jack tree. The Mango tree has a thick layer of cork which, as it thickens, cracks until flakes of bark drop off.

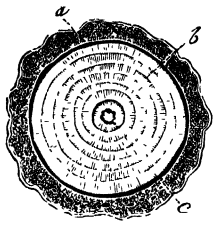


Fig. 14. — Transverse section of the stem of a dicotyledonous tree. *a*. Bark. *b*. Concentric layers of wood. *c*. Central pith.

Under the cork layer is the *inner bark,* called *bast,* and inside this are concentric layers of wood. The younger or outer layers of wood are that part of the stem through which the sap ascends from the roots to the branches. Any injury to the bark or sapwood may interfere seriously with the circulation of the sap or let disease-fungi enter into the stem. A tree, however, has the power of healing its wounds by a rapid growth of cork at the edges which gradually cover the damaged area. This peculiarity is made use of in the process of grafting mangoes.

A small Mango plant, about as thick as one's finger, is grown from a seed in a pot, and when it is required to make a graft, a slice is taken out of one side of the stem down as deep as the pith and about an inch long. A branch of one of the good edible kind of Mango of the same thickness is treated in the same way. The two trees are then so placed that the two cut parts of them are opposite one another. They are tied firmly together with some soft twine and covered over with cowdung. In a short time (a month to 6 weeks) the two cut surfaces unite, when the branch may be cut away altogether from the tree and the top from the seedling, and the graft Mango can be taken away and planted.

2. The **Leaves** are long and narrow. (*a*) They are *so placed* on the stem *as to allow each to get its share of light:* the result is that the Mango tree gives a very dense shade.

(*b*) The *petioles* (leaf stalks), besides placing the leaves in such a position that they can get light, also *save them from being torn* when the *wind* blows very strongly as they are springy. If the leaves were fixed on more rigidly, the branches of the tree would get broken. As it is, the leaf sways from side to side and so escapes most of the wind pressure. In a similar way, by bending down, they allow any raindrops falling on them to reach the ground, instead of adding to the weight the branches have to bear.—The leaf must, however, have a certain rigidity in order to spread out a wide, green surface to the sun, and this is obtained by the system of veins or ribs.

(*c*) The leaves are also *leathery,* due to a thick epidermis (coat), which *reduces the rate of evaporation* of the water in the tree and is, therefore, of great importance to it. Every one knows that the Mango tree is ever green and has leaves on during the hot, rainless weather. If the covering were not thick, the leaves would droop, as, indeed, you can see the young leaves do on any dry sunny day, because they have not had time for their epidermis to form properly, and the water in them is evaporating quicker than the roots can supply it. As it is, the Mango tree is able to keep its leaves on all the year round and thus can keep its roots much cooler than a tree which has at times no leaves, like the Teak. It is also able to go on storing up food all through

the year, and as its fruit forms at a time when most trees are leafless, this is another very great advantage to the Mango tree.

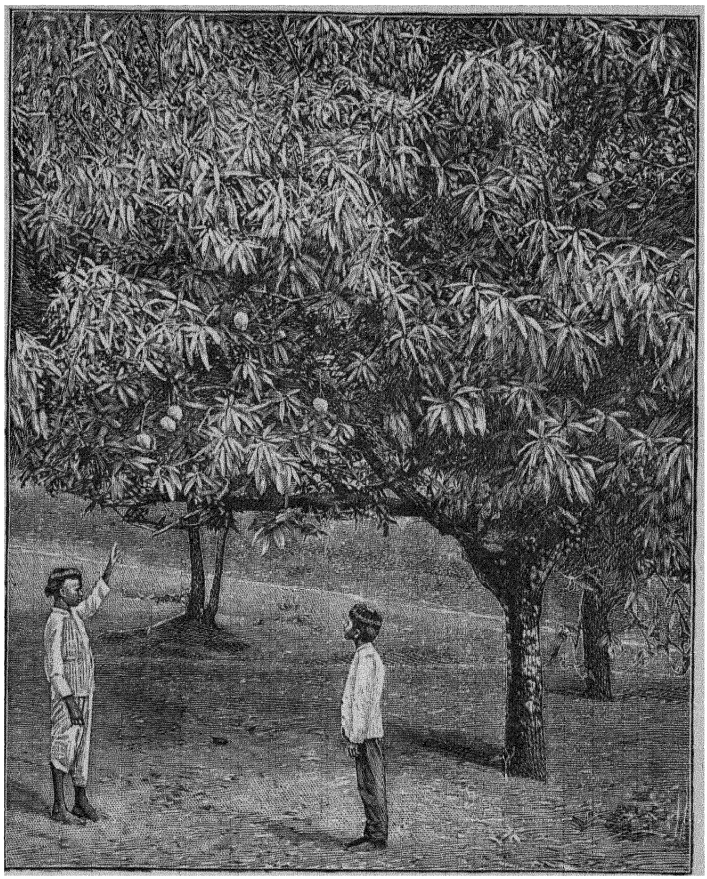


Fig. 15. — The Mango tree (*Mangifera indica*).

(*d*) Further, the leaves are *smooth and shining* like a looking glass. Now, we all know that light-rays are reflected from the surface of a mirror and not absorbed. The same is the case with the heat-rays which accompany the former, and by thus reflecting the heat-rays the temperature of the leaf is kept down and *a further source of evaporation taken away.* Evaporation increases in proportion as the temperature rises.

(*e*) Another fact connected with the *arrangement of the leaves* may be noticed. They are so placed that, when rain falls, most of the *water is carried from leaf to leaf from the centre* of the tree *to its circumference* (compare the flow of water down a tiled roof!), and it is on the outside of the tree that the young roots which alone can absorb water are most numerous. The big roots cannot do so, as they are covered with bark. This dripping tends to make the young roots grow outwards to where they can get water easiest. This again serves to give the tree a very wide root system and prevents its being blown over by storms.



Fig. 16.—Flower of the Mango tree (considerably enlarged size).

3. The **Flowers** are small and grow in erect panicles, which generally appear in January, February or March. The 5 sepals enclose 5 greenish-yellow petals which are alternate with them. There are from 1 to 5 stamens, one of which only is perfect. The flower contains, in addition, a nectary which is an organ to secrete honey. You find it arranged round the ovary and consisting of 5 fleshy bodies. The existence of such a nectary suggests that the flower depends for fertilization on attracting insects. The want of show in individual flowers is made up for by placing very large numbers of flowers close together.

4. When the **Fruit** begins to grow, the stalk of the panicle is not strong enough to hold it erect, so the fruit hangs down. Even so it would never be able to nourish all the fruits which might be expected from the number of flowers. Nature corrects herself. As the fruits grow, nourishment is gradually directed into from one to six of the most vigorous fruits, and the rest drop off gradually.

The ripe fruit is slightly compressed and is beaked, the point showing where the style was. It contains a fleshy, palatable pulp under its leathery skin. The pulp surrounds a woody one-seeded nut with a fibrous beard. In the more inferior kinds these fibres run right through the pulp. The whole fruit is just a big drupe like a peach or plum.



Fig. 17.—Branch of the Mango tree with fruits.

5. If the **Seed** is to grow into a new tree, it must be carried away from the tree which bore it, as it could not thrive under the dense shade of the parent tree. This is provided for by the delicious pulp covering the seed, attracting men and animals to pick it up and carry it away. The seed is protected at the same time by its hard covering. We may notice a further instance of Nature's care in that the fruit, until it is ripe, is so acid that it cannot be eaten with any pleasure. Unripe seeds do not grow well.



Fig. 18. — Transverse section of a Mango drupe with seed.

6. **Enemies.** — The Mango tree has many enemies destroying its leaves and fruits. Especially the young leaves of the tree are subjected to the attack of various insects. In northern India the Mango Weevil (*Cryptorhynchus mangifera*) is a great pest. The larvæ of this beetle grow in the fruit, the eggs being deposited either on the ovary of the flower or on young fruits. As the hibernation of the insect through the winter months takes place in the bark of the tree, the crevices and holes in the trunk of the trees thus affected should be plastered over to destroy the insects at that time.

Other Mangoes.

The Mango tree has some relatives affording useful fruits. One of these is the **Cashew Nut** (*Anacardium occidentale* — *Can.* Gēru; *Mal.* Kaçumāvu; *Tam.* Mundirikai; *Tel.* Jīḍimāmiḍi; *San.* Çōphaharā), an American tree, brought to India by the Portuguese. What is generally called the fruit is the swollen flower stalk which bears the seed in a hard case at the end. Both the juicy stalk and the nut are eaten. The former is very pretty, being coloured either a pale yellow or a brilliant red. The latter is protected by the cells in the cover being filled with an extremely acrid juice. They are, as a rule, roasted before being opened to get at the kernels which are edible and are exported in large quantities from the Malabar coast.

The **Indian Marking Nut** (*Semecarpus anacardium* — *Can.* Gērkāyi, kēra; *Mal.* Čērmara; *Tam.* Çēngoṭaimaram; *Tel.* Jiḍičeṭṭu; *San.* Agnimukhi) yields a corrosive black juice, used by dhobies for marking clothes.

The fruit of the **Hog Plum Tree** (*Spondias mangifera* — *Can.* Ambaṭa; *Mal.* Ambāḷam; *Tam.* Kāṭṭumā; *Tel.* Ambāḷamu; *San.* Āmrātaka) is eaten, being a substitute for tamarind in curries. The tree flowers when it is leafless.

7. Order: The Leguminosæ.

Leaves very often compound. Sepals 5, petals 5. Stamens generally 10, free or variously combined. Fruit a legume with the calyx attached, very various in shape.

This large order is divided into three tribes,

A. The Peaflower Tribe (*Papilionaceæ*).

B. The Cassia Tribe (*Cæsalpinieæ*).

C. The Mimosa Tribe (*Mimoseæ*).

A. THE PEAFLOWER TRIBE (*Papilionaceæ*).

The Garden Pea* (*Pisum sativum*).

(*Can.* Baṭāṇi. *Mal.* Pattāṇi. *Tam.* Paṭāṇi. *Tel.* Guṇduçanagalu.)

The Pea has from time immemorial been a plant cultivated by man for its nutritious seeds.

1. **Seed** and **Germination.**—If a few pea-seeds be laid in water or on moist earth, the coat of the seeds, called *testa,* can after a short time be easily torn off. The seed is then seen to consist of 2 halves, which represent the seed-leaves (fig. 19, *b*). Between these a small bud can be seen, in which root (radicle, fig. 17, *a*), stem and leaves (plumule, fig. 17, *c*) may easily be distinguished. The seed then contains under its coat the future plant in miniature. Considering how tender this bud is, we can easily understand why the outer coat is so hard and leathery: it has to protect the bud.

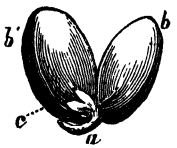


Fig. 19.—Seed of the Bean.
a. Radicle. *b*. Seed-leaves. *c*. Plumule.

To *observe the first stage of the growth of the plant, i. e., of its germination,* we put a few seeds in water. After some time they swell until the expanding germ bursts the coat and a tiny root makes its appearance. If we now place the seeds in moist and loose earth, we shall find that the root forces its way downwards into the ground, gradually sending off tiny branches or rootlets all round. Then the stem above the seed-leaves begins to lengthen and to bend like a hook, making its way upwards until it reaches the surface, when it will, at last, become straight and unfold

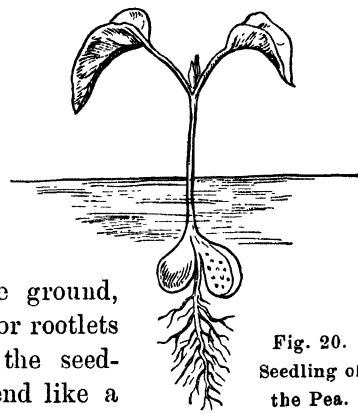


Fig. 20. Seedling of the Pea.

* If the Pea is not at hand, any of the following will answer equally well as type of this tribe: Bean, Gram, Indigo (Plate No. 634), Wild Liquorice, or Shankapushpa (*Clitoria*).

the first pair of leaves. The seed-leaves lie below the ground. As the stem continues to grow producing leaf after leaf, the seed-leaves at the bottom wither and fall off, because all the food stored in them has been absorbed.

This process of germination gives us many things to learn.

(*a*) If peas or any other kind of seed are laid on a dry spot, they never germinate. They do so only when they are moistened. But then the question arises: why does the mother-plant not furnish the seeds with the water necessary for their germination at the very beginning, or why are the *seeds* always so *dry and hard* when they are produced in the fruit of the mother-plant? If it were not so, the seeds would try to grow as soon as they fall on the ground. But the tiny weak roots could not make their way into the hard ground, nor could they find any nourishment during the greater part of the year. For, at the time when plants generally ripen their seeds, the ground is dry and hard, the rains being over. The seeds that had thus already begun to germinate would simply die of thirst and it would be almost impossible for a plant to reproduce itself by seeds. In the case of annual herbs, such as Peas and Beans etc., it would mean the extirpation of the genus in a very short time; for annual herbs are not able to live after flowering and fruiting. Another advantage of having hard, dry seeds is that animals, birds and insects cannot destroy them so readily as if they were soft.

(*b*) We have noticed that *the first part* that comes out of the germinating seed *is the root.* There is a reason for this. The young plant must be fixed in the ground, while the hook-like stem breaks through the surface of it. The side roots, issuing from the main root, make the mooring so much the firmer. The wind may now blow in whatever direction it will, it cannot overturn the plant. — The root has also other work to do. It must take in water and nourishment which is to be conveyed to the leaves where it will be transformed into that condition in which it can be used by the plant for the building up of new leaves. Now, the root must necessarily grow before any other part can do so. For then it will be ready for its functions and can at once send up food to the leaves when they are formed.

(*c*) The bud being extremely tender would suffer injury, if it had to force its way up through the soil. It is therefore that the thick, strong *stem bends* in such a way that the bud remains below whilst it raises the earth above it.

(*d*) All the parts of the germinating seed are entirely colourless so long as they are within the coat of the seed and below the surface of the earth. They become, however, green when they come up to the light. It is the *action of sunlight which produces the green colour* in the stems and leaves of the plants.

(*e*) We know that the plants build up new parts from the food prepared in the leaves. But whence does the germinating seed take the materials necessary to form the root, the stem, and the leaves, as it has no leaves to prepare its food? We shall be in a position to give an answer to this question when we examine the seed-leaves carefully. These leaves are hard and full in the beginning, but gradually they become softer and softer, until they finally shrivel up and decay: The plant grew and *formed its root, its stem, and the first pair of leaves, all at the expense of the seed-leaves.* These were packed full with provisions such as the young plant would require at its first stage of growth. This food is, in the case of the Pea and many other plants, deposited in the seed-leaves themselves, whereas we find the food-store separate from the seed-leaves in the seeds of Rice and many other plants.

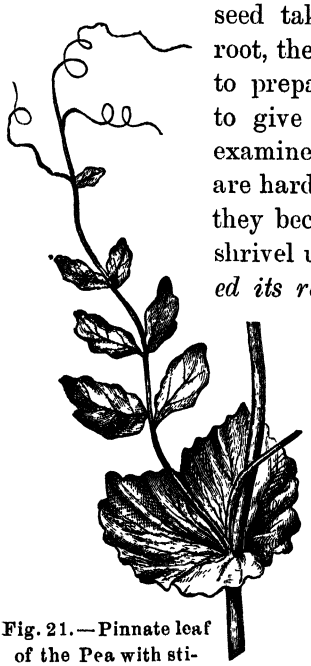


Fig. 21.—Pinnate leaf of the Pea with stipules and tendrils.

The food, too, may be stored either as starch, as is the case in the Leguminosæ and the Grasses, which include Wheat, Barley, Rice and Bamboos, or as oil which is the form the stored food takes in the Castor-oil plant, Flax, Cotton, Mustard and many others.

2. **The Pea plant as a Creeper.**—(*a*) The Pea plant is a *creeper;* for the slender stem, with its many leaves, is not able to stand upright

and must needs seek the support of other stronger plants. For this purpose it is furnished with tendrils at the end of its leaves which take hold of any objects near them (fig. 21).

(*b*) The leaves are compound, each consisting of several pairs of leaflets arranged on opposite sides of the common stalk. Such leaves have some resemblance to a feather and are therefore called *pinnate* (like a feather). The *tendrils* at the end are simply the midribs of leaflets the blades of which have shrunk. They are straight at first, but when they strike a branch or twig of another plant or some other support, they coil round the latter, taking a firm hold. This done, the free part coils screwlike, thus forming an elastic attachment to its support.

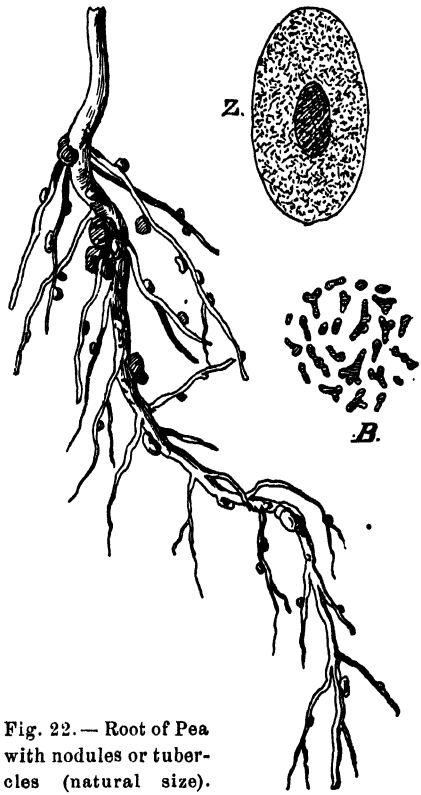


Fig. 22.— Root of Pea with nodules or tubercles (natural size). *Z.* Cell of a tubercle filled with innumerable bacteria (120 times enlarged). *B.* Bacteria (800 times enlarged).

(*c*) At the base of the leaf-stalk there are large appendages, called *stipules* (fig. 21). They are, at first, placed vertically and protect the tender leaf- and flower-buds within them. At a later stage they spread out and expose their whole surface to the action of the sunlight, as they have exactly the same functions as the leaves themselves.

3. **The Pea plant gathering Nitrogen from the Air.**—If you carefully pull a Pea plant out of the soil, you will notice numerous little knots or *nodules on the roots* (fig. 22) which are not accidental, but have their own little functions in the great household of Nature.

In each little grain of earth there are numerous minute germs, called bacteria. Some of these have the peculiarity of settling on the tiny root-ends of the plants of this order and grow as parasites on them being nourished by their juices. They cause those parts of the root on which they settle to grow exuberantly, thus forming little nodules or tubercles (fig. 22, *Z* and *B*) on the roots. Now, these bacteria which are themselves tiny plants have the power, unlike other plants, of taking in from the air nitrogen which is an essential ingredient of the living parts of plants and without which plants cannot thrive. Other plants cannot take nitrogen from the air which, indeed, always contains plenty of it, but must take it from the soil through their roots. These bacteria, then, take their supply of nitrogen from the air. When they die after some time, their remains serve the Pea plant as very good manure containing, as they do, plenty of nitrogen. We see here, then, a beautiful reciprocity. At first the Pea plants allow the bacteria to settle on them and to participate in the food they draw from the soil and air for themselves. The guest in return gives nitrogen to the host.

This fact is of the *greatest importance to agriculture.* With each crop the farmer takes away from the field a great quantity of nitrogen deposited in the seeds and other parts of the crop, and this nitrogen has all been taken from the soil. If he wants another good crop next year, he must needs replace what he has taken away, and this he does in the shape of manure. If he also grows such plants as Gram, Lentils, Peas, etc. in the cropped fields, these themselves will help to manure the soil by acting as hosts to the bacteria which absorb nitrogen from the air.

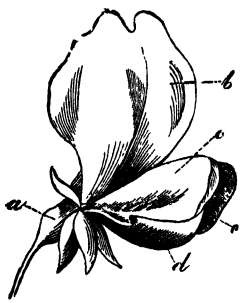


Fig. 23.—Butterfly flower of the Pea.
a. Calyx. *b*. Standard. *c*. Wings. *d*. Keel.

4. The **Flower** has some **resemblance to a Butterfly** (fig. 23). It is irregular, but a vertical section divides it into similar halves.

(*a*) The *corolla,* supported by a cup-like calyx with 5 lobes, consists of 5 petals which are generally white and differ each

in shape and size. The largest of them is erect and is called the *standard* (fig. 24, *St.*), because it stands up above the rest and shows its colours so boldly. It might also be called "sail", for it answers the purpose of one. The wind blows it round, so that it always turns its back to bad weather, and serves as a shield to the delicate parts within. The two lateral petals (fig. 24, *W.*) are called *wings*, and the two lower ones (fig. 24, *K.*) are so combined that they form a boat and are called the *keel*. These boat-like leaves enclose the stamens and the pistil (fig. 25), which latter consists of a long ovary and a style. The end of the style is bearded with a row of short hairs along its inner face and thus looks like a small brush (fig. 25, *S.*).

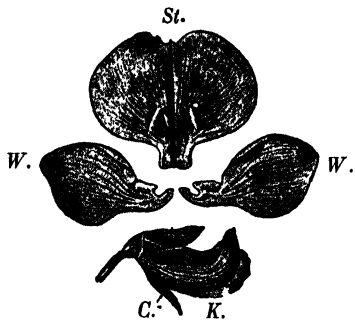


Fig. 24.—Flower of Pea dissected into its various parts: *St.* Standard. *W.* Wings. *K.* Keel. *C.* Calyx of which the front part is removed.

(*b*) There are 10 *stamens*. The filaments of nine of them are united to a tube which, however, is not joined at the top. The filament of the 10th stamen lies in the split. It is only through this split that insects, attracted by the large standard and also by the sweet scent the flower exhales, can get at the honey which lies hidden within the tube of the filaments. While trying to get at the inner parts of the flower they must press down the keel. At once the style protrudes and touches the body of the visitor, which probably has come from another flower where its hairy body was covered with pollen, and the ovules are fertilized. Next, the brush under the stigma of the style, on which the stamens have deposited their pollen, rubs against the insect and sends it off to

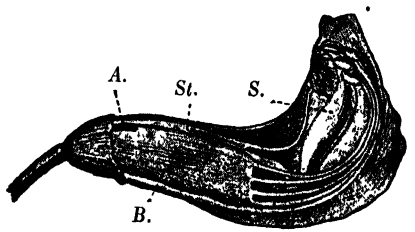


Fig. 25. — Keel of Pea flower (3 times enlarged). *B.* Bundle of the 9 combined stamens (only 4 of the 9 are visible). *St.* Single stamen. *A.* Access to honey. *S.* Style with stigma and brush.

the next flower with a new load of dust. Now, as the wings and the keel of the flower are, by a sort of joint at their base, attached to one another very closely and firmly, it requires considerable strength to press them down so as to get at the honey in the interior. Not all insects have the strength necessary to do this. Bees are strong enough to overcome all the difficulties on their way to the honey, and it is chiefly by them that the Pea flowers are fertilized. Some of them, it is true, try to get at the honey by a shorter way. They break in like thieves and bite a hole through the flower-leaves at the base.

5. The **Fruit** (fig. 26) is a pod or *legume,* consisting of a single leaf, which is folded inwards in its midrib having the edges seamed together. It contains several seeds in one row, all attached to the seam of the fruit-leaf. When ripe, the legume splits both at the midrib as also at the seam, thus dividing into 2 halves. (Contrast the legume with the silique of the mustard!)

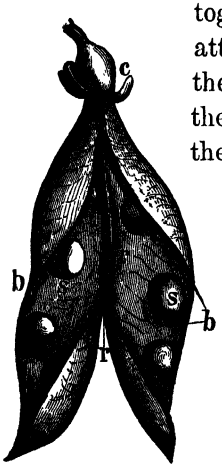


Fig. 26.—Legume of the Pea.
c. Calyx. *s.* Seeds.
r. Midrib.
b. Ventral suture.

Other Papilionaceæ or Butterfly-flower Plants.

1. **Usefulness.**—This tribe is a very large one. We find these plants cultivated in the fields for the fibre of the stem like the Sunn Hemp (*Crotalaria juncea*), for their nutritious seeds, like the Bean (*Phaseolus trilobus*), the Horse Gram (*Dolichos uniflorus*), the Lentil or Bengal Gram (*Cicer arietinum*), the Green Gram (*Phaseolus mungo*), the Ground Nut (*Arachis hypogea*); for the dye obtained from the leaves, like the Indigo plant (*Indigofera tinctoria*—Plate No. 634). But we can also see them wild in the forests, as for instance the Rosewood (*Dalbergia latifolia*), which yields an excellent timber, or the Coral Tree (*Erythrina indica*) with its beautiful shining red flowers, and so many others; while the creepers Wild Liquorice (*Abrus precatorius*) and Shankapushpa (*Clitoria ternatea*) adorn our hedges with the pretty scarlet

seeds of the former and the large blue and white flowers of the latter.



Fig. 27.—The Indigo plant *(Indigofera tinctoria).*

2. Their **Leaves** are almost always *compound,* sometimes *trifoliate, i.e.,* consisting of 3 leaflets (Bean), sometimes *pinnate* having the leaflets in opposite pairs generally with a single one at the tip (Indigo, *Can.* Nīla, fig. 27). In many cases the leaves assume *different positions during days and nights,* a peculiarity that deserves our particular notice. We take, for instance, the leaf of the Bean or of the Coral tree. It is trifoliate, the leaflet standing at the end being symmetrical and the 2 lateral ones oblique. In the daytime they are spread out to catch as much sunlight as possible (fig. 28, I); but as soon as darkness sets in, the common stalk of the 3 leaflets begins to rise up, and the 3 leaflets descend and hang down vertically (fig. 28, II). We say, the leaf "sleeps" now. On the following morning it resumes its original position. These movements, which are very regular, are effected by the swollen joints, which can be observed at the base of the common leaf stalk, as also on each of the stalks of the 3 leaflets.

What does this curious behaviour of the leaf mean for the plant? We know that the plants take from the soil nourishment which, dissolved in water, ascends to their leaves, where the water is evaporated leaving the salts of the soil behind it in the leaves. The work of thus pumping up new food to the leaves must stop when the evaporation by the leaves is obstructed; and this is exactly what takes place when dew settles upon the leaves. Now, it is a known fact that articles laid horizontally on the ground have a greater deposit of dew than such as hang vertically. The

leaves, therefore, assume this position in order to prevent the dew from covering them and thus obstructing the process of evaporation which is so essential for their growth. — Sometimes when the heat of the sun becomes excessive so as to cause too much water to be evaporated, they are also seen to assume their "sleeping" attitude. As they place themselves parallel to the sun's rays, they are struck only by a few of them and at oblique angles (fig. 30); consequently they do not get so hot as it would be the case, if they were at right angles to them. This is another striking protective arrangement.

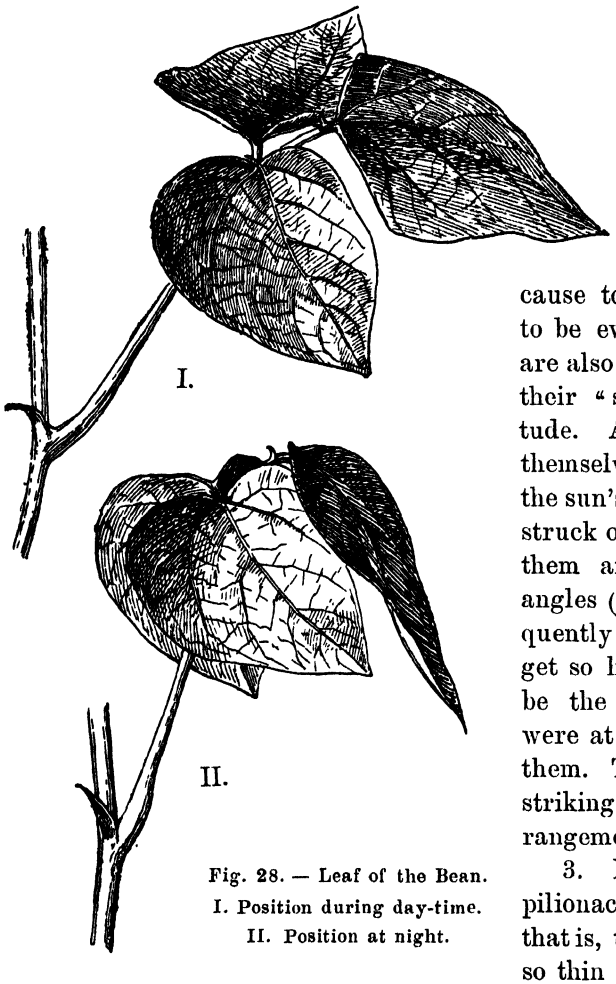


Fig. 28. — Leaf of the Bean.
I. Position during day-time.
II. Position at night.

3. Many of the Papilionaceæ are **Climbers**, that is, their stems are so thin and weak that they cannot stand upright with the load of their leaves and flowers or fruits, but must seek some support to reach the light. Now, there are many plants that do this by means of tendrils, such as the Pea, the Gourd and the Vine, or by their thorns like the Rose. The majority of the climbing Papilionaceæ are, however,

twiners. To understand the manner in which they twine, we shall examine some young plants of the Bean or of Shankapushpa (*Clitoria*) sown in flower-pots. In the beginning, their stems will grow straight up; but then their tips bend and begin to make a circular movement, finishing one turn in about two hours. The stem seeks a support. When it has found this, it turns round it firmly and the tip of the stem continues its circular movements as it grows and thus winds round and round its support. This movement of the stem of the Bean is made in a direction contrary to that of the hands of a clock, namely from right to left. There are other plants that move in the same direction as the clock's hands.

4. The **Flowers** are butterfly-like, as described in the Pea plant (fig. 23), and can be well studied in the Indian Coral Tree (*Erythrina indica*—*Can.* Hongara), or in the Dhak Tree (*Butea frondosa*—*Can.* Muttala). The **Fruit** is always a dry legume, containing one row of large seeds (fig. 26).

B. THE CASSIA TRIBE (*Cæsalpinieæ*).

The **Pudding Pipe Tree** (*Cassia fistula*—*Can.* Konde; *Mal.* Konne; *Tam.* Kovrai; *Tel.* Rēlačeṭṭu; *San.* Suvarnaka) is one of the most beautiful jungle trees when in full flower. The fragrant, golden flowers hanging down in long, drooping racemes appear after the first rains together with the pinnate leaves which the tree sheds in the cold season. The flowers (fig. 29) are slightly irregular, one of the petals reminding one of the standard of the butterfly-flower. The stamens number 10, they are all free and of various length. The fruit is a long, brown cylindrical pod or legume, the seeds being surrounded by a sweet pulp.

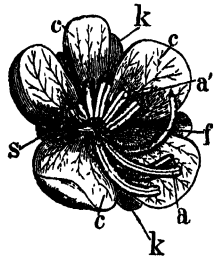


Fig. 29.— Flower of Cassia. *k.* Calyx. *c.* Corolla. *a.* Stamens. *a'.* The interior shorter stamens. *f.* Pistil.

Some other Cæsalpinieæ are the useful Tamarind Tree (*Tamarindus indica*—*Can.* Huṇise), the superb Flower Fence (*Cæsalpinia pulcherrima*—*Can.* Ratnagandhi), and the stout Goldmohur Tree (*Poinciana regia*—*Can.* Doḍḍa Ratnagandhi or Sankēšvara).

C. THE MIMOSA TRIBE (*Mimoseæ*).

The Babul Acacia (*Acacia arabica*).

(Plate No. 628.)

(*Can.* Karijāli. *Mal.* Karuvēlam. *Tam.* Karuvēl. *Tel.* Nallatumma. *San.* Barbūrah.)

This well-known tree is essentially a tree of dry regions and can, therefore, be met with more in the interior of India than on the sea-coast. To such places it is ingeniously adapted.

1. Large blades of **Leaves** would allow too active an evaporation for the thirsty places the Acacia lives in. Their surface is, therefore, broken up into numerous linear segments: the leaves are *bipinnate* (= doubly pinnate). Besides, they possess the ability of *folding their leaflets* like the Bean. They do this not only at night, but also in the day-time when the heat of the sunshine becomes excessive. By placing the leaflets vertically they cause the sun's rays to fall on them in acute angles and so reduce the heating effect of the sunshine and thereby the action of evaporation through their surface.

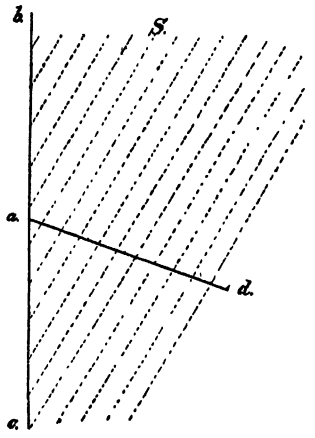


Fig. 30.— Solar rays falling vertically on *a d*, but slanting on *a c* which are both of the same length.

2. At the base of each leaf there is a pair of *thorns* which the shrub can very well employ as weapons against animals which would otherwise feed on them. Protection is also afforded by an *astringent acid,* called tannin, contained *in the bark.* If the bark is damaged, gum trickles out of it and covers the wound. As the Acacia tree is one of the few plants that grow in deserts, it can very well make use of such means of defence.

3. The **Flowers** (fig. 31) are small, but are grouped in round heads. As the tree flowers in desert regions and at such a time when it does not rain, it can dispense with the many arrangements by which, in other plants, the pollen of the stamens is

protected against bad weather. So the floral envelopes (*calyx* and *corolla*) are considerably reduced (see fig. 31 *c* and *k*), and the numerous stamens protrude widely from them. In fact, the flower-heads look yellow from the pollen only.

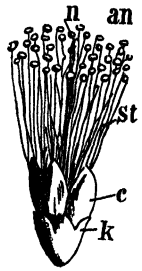


Fig. 31.—Flower of the Acacia. *k*. Calyx. *c*. Corolla. *st*. Stamens. *an*. Anthers. *n*. Stigma of style.

The *legumes* (Plate No. 628, 4) are flat and narrow and depressed between the seeds.

4. **Uses for Man.**—The tree is useful in many ways. The wood is very hard and can be employed for all purposes for which a hard wood is required, such as plough-shares, knees and ribs of country boats, naves of wheels and so on. The bark is employed in tanning. The pods form a valuable food for cattle, and the young branches are a favourite food of camels and goats. The bark yields also gum which is an article of general commerce.

Other Mimoseæ

are the Red-wood Tree (*Adenanthera pavonina*—*Can.* Mañjeṭṭi, Mañjāḍi) known for its scarlet seeds, the Soapnut Acacia (*Acacia concinna*—*Can.* Sīge), and the well-known but much-hated Sensitive Plant (*Mimosa pudica*—*Can.* Nāčike-giḍa), so called from its highly sensitive leaves which fold and bend when touched.

8. Order: The Rose Family.

(Rosaceæ.)

Leaves alternate with stipules. Flowers regular. Receptacle of flower like a disk or a cup. 5 sepals, 5 petals, and numerous stamens inserted on the margin of the calyx.

The Rose (*Rosa centifolia*).

(*Can.* Gulābi. *Mal.* Paninīrpu.)

The Rose is the queen of the flowers. Its graceful shape, the beautiful colour, and the delicious scent have won fame for it.

It is the symbol of youth, of innocence and of beauty. With roses we decorate our houses on joyful occasions, and roses we lay on the graves of our beloved ones.

1. The **Double Rose** (*Rosa centifolia*) does not grow wild. It is man's industry and skill which have produced this beautiful flower from the wild kind that grows in hedges (*Rosa canina*). If a bush with double flowers is not attended to and pruned and manured, it will soon yield single flowers. This shows that both the cultivated and the wild Rose have the same origin.

2. One of the remarkable things regarding the **Stem** are the *prickles*. They are sharp and bend slightly downwards. With the help of them the weak stems seek support on other plants that are stronger than themselves. But the prickles are also powerful weapons against enemies, such as cattle which would feed on them, or snails which would crawl up to the tender leaves, or mice which would eat the sweet fruits, called hips. It may be noticed that the prickles of the Rose are only loosely fixed on the bark and, therefore, differ from the spines of the Bael tree or the Lemon tree which are joined to the wood of the tree and are covered with bark and are, therefore, really branches.

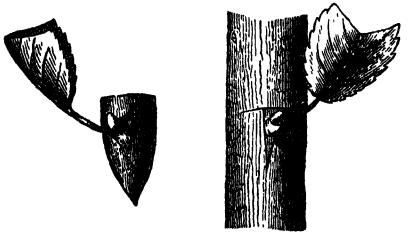


Fig. 32.—Grafting by budding.

As in the Mango tree the finer sorts of Roses are *grafted* on the wild sorts by budding, *i.e.*, by inserting the bud of a superior kind under the bark of the inferior (fig. 32).

3. The Rose **Leaves** consist of a long middle rib with 5 to 7 leaflets, of which 2 are always opposite, the midrib ending in a single leaf. Such leaves are called *imparipinnate,* that is, unevenly pinnate (compare it with a feather!). At the base of the leaf-stalk are 2 *stipules* (leafy appendages) the object of which can be easily learned when we examine young branches: the stipules of an old leaf embrace a younger leaf; between the stipules of this, the next younger again is covered and so on. In this manner the inner, very tender leaves are covered by the outer

ones by their sheathing stipules. The young leaflets are folded and laid together like the leaves of a book. It may also be noticed that the young leaves of some sorts of Roses are red coloured. This is a protective arrangement which we shall explain in the leaves of the Cinnamon tree (*q. v.*).



Fig. 33.— Hedgerose (*Rosa canina*).
1. Flowering branch. 2. Longitudinal section of bud.
3. Ovule with style. 4. Hip (fruit). 5 and 6. Seed.
7. Diagram.

4. In the **Flowers** of the wild species (fig. 33) we can distinguish first a green cuplike seed-vessel, crowned by 5 calyx leaves, 5 petals and numerous stamens. The cultivated Rose has, however, numerous petals, which are formed by the transformation of some of the stamens. This is sometimes easily seen as some of the petals in the middle occasionally bear pollen bags. In the bud the sepals and petals are so arranged that they overlap one another by one margin (fig. 33, 2 and 7), thus affording a very good protection from rain, damp and other damage.

5. The **Seeds** are seated in the hollowed-out fleshy top of the flower stalk which becomes a beautiful red colour when ripe, and is made up of a soft sweet pulp in order to attract birds by whose means the seeds can be scattered far and wide. To prevent the seeds being digested by the birds they have a hard thick skin and prickly hairs and so are not damaged even if swallowed, which is rather unlikely, as the birds do not like the hairs.

6. The **Scent** of the Rose is derived from a volatile oil which evaporates easily and leaves no greasy stain, if applied to paper. This oil is extracted from the petals, by distillation, and then sold as a precious perfume, known as Attar of Roses.

7. **Enemies.**— The Rose shrubs are subjected to the attacks of various insects. The cockchafers defoliate the bushes, and several plant-lice (*Aphides*) and scale-insects (*Coccidæ*) prey on the juice of the stem and the leaves. What makes these garden pests so destructive is the rapid rate of their multiplication. A remedy suggested is the application of kerosine emulsion, prepared of one part kerosine oil mixed with 80 parts of water and this added to an equal quantity of fresh milk, all thoroughly shaken up in a bottle (*Agriculture,* Mukerji).

The Rose family (*Rosaceæ*) is but little represented on the plains of India. Many fruits, such as the Apple, the Pear, the Almond, the Peach, the Cherry, the Plum, Strawberries and Raspberries belong to this family, but come to perfection only in cooler climates.

9. Order: The Myrtle Family.

(Myrtaceæ.)

1. The **Jamoon** (*Eugenia jambolana*—*Can.* Nēraḷe; *Mal.* Nāval; *Tam.* Nāval; *Tel.* Nērēḍu; *San.* Jāmbavam) grows to a large size, and is common everywhere, every soil and situation suiting it equally well. The violet fruits are eaten, when ripe, by men, animals and birds, and the seeds are scattered in this way. The bark is strongly astringent, and a decoction of it is used by native physicians. It is also used to a small extent for tanning fishing nets.—The tree has opposite, oblong, entire leaves. From the axils of the fallen leaves there grow panicles of small white flowers. The cup-shaped calyx, with its 4 lobes, completely covers the flower when in bud. The 4 petals, which are inserted on a disc within the calyx, fall off as soon as the flower opens and the numerous stamens unfold. The style is single. The ripe fruit is a succulent berry with one large seed which consists principally of 2 large seed-leaves (*cotyledons*).

2. The **Guava** (*Psidium guava* — *Can.* Pēraḷe; *Mal.* Malampēra; *Tam.* Koyyāpalam; *Tel.* Jāmapaṇḍu; *San.* Pēraḷa) is largely cultivated for its delicious fruits, in which many seeds are

embedded in a white or rosy pulp. — Other plants that belong to the Myrtles are the Pomegranate (*Punica granatum*), cultivated almost everywhere in India, and the gigantic and useful Blue Gum tree (*Eucalyptus globulus*), whose leaves are so beautifully adapted to a dry and hot climate like that of its original home, Australia. — Cloves are the dried unopened flowerbuds of *Caryophyllus aromaticus* from the Moluccas.

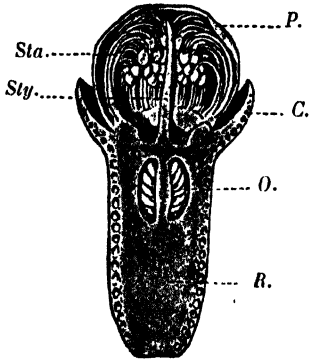


Fig. 34. — Flower-bud of the Clove (*Caryophyllus aromaticus*). *R.* Receptacle. *O.* Ovary. *C.* Calyx. *P.* Petals. *Sta.* Stamens. *Sty.* Style.

Characteristics of the Myrtles. — The leaves are marked with transparent dots when held up to the light (like those of the Citron tree), the dots being marks of a volatile oil. Their veins run parallel with, and just inside, the margin. The petals are thrown off when the stamens unfold; nevertheless the flowers remain very showy on account of the great number, colour and length of the stamens (compare the flowers of *Acacia*, page 35). The fruit is usually crowned with the limb of the calyx, the lower part of which grows with the seeds and forms a covering for them.



Fig 35.— Branch of the Mangrove tree (*Bruguiera*) with fruits. On the left side the flower of it.

Allied Orders.

Related to the Myrtle Family is the **Mangrove Family** (*Rhizophoreæ*). The Mangroves are small trees, very common along the coasts in the estuaries of rivers. They must have saltish

water and loose, muddy soil. These trees manage to get a firm root-hold in the soft mud by sending out from their trunks and branches numerous *adventitious* roots, which give the mangrove swamps a peculiar appearance, especially at low tide, when the whole grove appears lifted over the water, as if standing on stilts. — Another adaptation to its life on this peculiar soil is the *germination of the seed* (fig. 35). The structure of the flower is similar to that of a Myrtle. The calyx completely covers the ovary in its lower cup-shaped part, and has from 4 to 12 lobes. The whitish and fringed petals number as many, and embrace double the number of stamens (fig. 35). The leathery fruit is crowned by the calyx and contains a single seed. It remains on the tree for a very long time, but soon after ripening the seed, *while still on the tree, begins to germinate* the radicle piercing through the apex of the fruit and forming a long spear-like body. After several months only the fruit, or rather the young plant, parts from the parent tree, drops into the soft mud and remains upright, and the tender shoot, which unfolds its leaves soon after, is kept above the water. The leaves are leathery, smooth and shiny. They have scales (stipules) at the base of their stalks, by which the next younger leaf is covered (compare Rose, page 37, below). They drop when the leaves unfold.

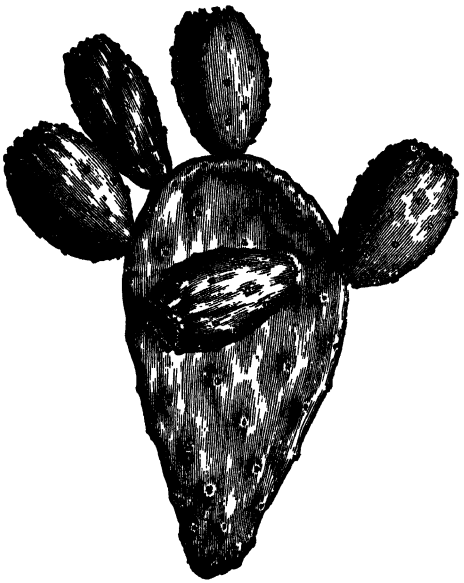


Fig. 36.—Opuntia with 5 fruits.

The **Prickly Pear Family** (*Cacteæ*) is an American order, but some cactuses, principally the **Prickly Pear** (*Opuntia Dillenii* — *Can.* Mullugalli; *Mal.* Nāgatāli; *Tam.* Nāgatāli; *Tel.* Nāgajamudu) and the **Night-flowering Cactus** (*Cereus erecta*)

are very widely naturalized in India. They are *desert plants* and are, accordingly, by the peculiar structure of their leaves and stems enabled to endure the longest drought. Leaves with their large surfaces, which allow a great deal of the water to evaporate, are dispensed with and become dry prickles. But the Cactus cannot do without starch to grow on, and so the thick stem always remains green and does the work of the leaves in the preparation of starch from the air. The moisture of which the plant gets a very scanty supply is stored up, as in a reservoir, in the fleshy parts of the stem and evaporated very frugally, the epidermis of it being thick and almost water-tight, the stomata in it being very few, and the sap becoming a thick and slimy fluid which does not easily pass into vapour. Thus the plants are able to thrive even when everything around them is dried up. Being the only succulent things in the deserts in which they grow wild they have to protect themselves, and this is done by turning the leaves into prickles which are very sharp and cause severe wounds.

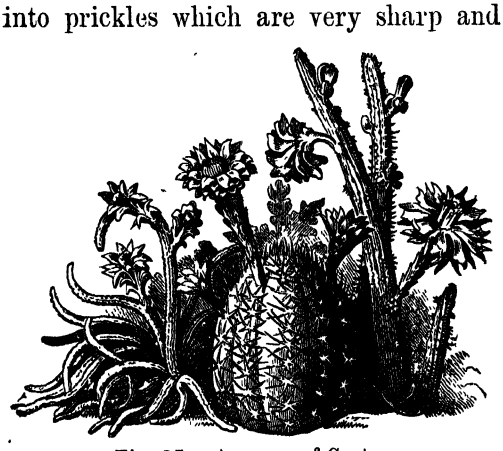


Fig. 37.—A group of Cacteæ.

There are 3 distinct forms of them, namely the globular (fig. 37, the central plant), the columnar (fig. 37, to the right), and the lobed or jointed (fig. 36). The Prickly Pear (*Opuntia Dillenii*) and the night-flowering *Cereus* have very showy flowers. Their fruits are soft and edible. In Mexico the Prickly Pear is cultivated for the sake of the cochineal insect that lives on it and yields a red dye. Here in India it may be used for fences, but is generally looked upon as a nuisance.

What people generally call Cactus are really Euphorbia (*q. v.*), which having to live under similar conditions have taken on the same habits. They, however, never bear showy flowers or large and soft fruits.

10. Order: The Cucumber Family.

(Cucurbitaceæ.)

Climbing herbs, with large, rough, alternate leaves and lateral tendrils. Flowers unisexual.

The Cucumber* (*Cucumis utilissimus*).

(*Can.* Saute. *Mal.* Veḷḷarika. *San.* Urvāruka, Karkaṭi.)

1. **Fruit and its Use.** — The Cucumber is extensively cultivated for its fruit. When half-grown the latter is pickled, when full-sized either eaten raw or used in curries. When gathered without being bruised and hung up, they keep good for several months. This circumstance renders it possible to store them for use at a time when other vegetables cannot be obtained. A cross section through the egg-shaped fruit, a berry, shows the fleshy pulp outside and numerous seeds embedded in 3 divisions in a sticky, jelly-like mass inside.

2. **Germination.** — The seeds that fall on moist ground soon begin to germinate, the sticky flesh round them drying up and fixing the seed firmly to the ground. When germinating the main root first appears out of the pointed end of the seed (fig. 38, 1) and sinks at once into the ground where soon rootlets are developed (fig. 38, 2). After that the part of the stalk between the root and the seed-bud begins to grow, but as the root is moored in the ground and the seed-shells stick firmly to the earth, the stalk becomes a small bow, bent upwards (fig. 38, 3), until by its continued growth it draws the seed-leaves out of the seed-shells. If some seeds are similarly laid on the ground, but freed from the sticky mass round them, they also germinate after a short time, but as the seed-shells are not gummed to the earth, the stalk lifts them up, and as the seed-leaves can get rid of their covers only with

* If *Cucumis utilissimus* is not at hand, the common Cucumber (*Cucumis sativus*—*Can.* Muḷḷu-saute) or any other of the many cultivated kinds of Gourds, Melons, or the Pumpkin, will do equally well as type of the family.

great difficulty, the plants may perish. This shows *why the seeds,* when ripe, *should have* such a *sticky, jelly-like mass round them.*

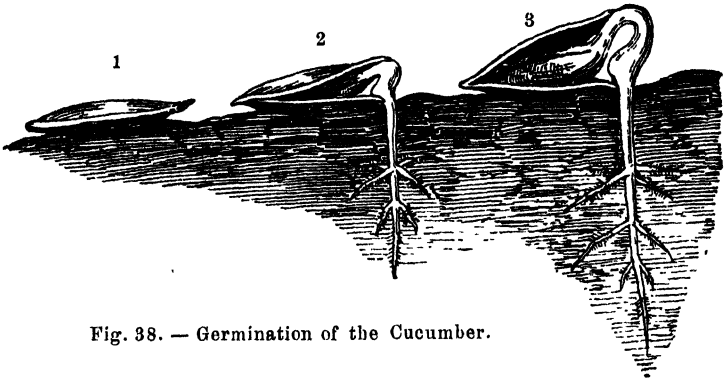


Fig. 38. — Germination of the Cucumber.

The fruit does not open by itself to let the seeds escape. For this purpose the help of man is required in the cultivated kinds, and that of animals in wild ones. Like numerous other plants whose seeds are dispersed by animals, the Cucumber has, therefore, a *fleshy, edible pulp which attracts animals.* When, perhaps, a boar eats such a fruit, many seeds, to be sure, will be devoured together with the pulp. The number of seeds, however, being very great, this is not a great loss. On the other hand, some seeds will stick to its mouth and legs, and will thus be spread far and wide.

The seedlings show a peculiarity, which we have already noticed in the leaves of the Bean (see page 32). They *fold up their seed-leaves* face to face *at sunset,* and expand them when daylight comes again. We have learned the importance of these movements, but here the folded seed-leaves seem to afford protection to the young shoot between them, which being very tender might be liable to damage owing to the reduction of temperature during the night.

3. The **Stalk,** as well as the leaves, are covered with numerous *bristly hairs* as a protection against animals. The hollow, five-edged *stem is succulent and long,* and hence not able to stand upright. It, therefore, lies straggling on the ground or climbs with

the help of its *tendrils*. These are wiry appendages of the leaves, rising from the base of the leaf-stalk. The ends of these tendrils move slowly, but continuously, round like the hands of a watch. The time they require for one circuit differs and depends chiefly on the temperature. If we put a little stick in the way of the moving tendril, we can notice the following. A few hours after the tip of the tendril touches the stick, it will have formed a sling round it. Some time later we shall find the stick wound round several times, and in the course of a few days the part of the tendril between its base and the stick will be shrivelled up like a cork-screw. In this way, the creeper fastens itself to various objects within its reach, and as the corkscrew-like tendrils act like springs, the wind or any shaking influence cannot easily tear away the plant from its support.

4. The **Leaves** are spirally arranged round the stem. But as a plant that lies or creeps on the ground can receive light only on *one* side of its stem, all its leaves should be directed to that side. To this end the long leaf-stalks make all sorts of turns and twists, thereby placing the leaves so that not one of them shades the other.

The leaves are *broad* and *cordate* (heart-shaped), the largest measuring about 5 inches each way. If we remember how succulent all the parts of the plant are and how much water it therefore requires, we can easily see the advantage the plant derives from the largeness of its leaves. Large leaves cover more ground than small ones; hence they prevent evaporation of water from the soil in a greater measure than could be done by smaller leaves.

Large leaves are liable to be torn by the wind much more easily than small ones; and in heart-shaped leaves like those of the Cucumber the weakest part is the base. Therefore this particular part is specially strengthened: The two great *side-ribs* are not only very strong, but they also form the margin of the leaves for a small stretch like the hem of a garment.

5. The **Flowers** rise singly from the axils of the leaves. The calyx is completely united to the yellow corolla, only its 5 teeth being free. The corolla forms a five-lobed bell. So far all flowers of the plant are alike. But if we proceed to examine their

stamens and pistils, we find that most of the flowers have only stamens (fig. 39), whilst some have only pistils. The former are known as a staminate or male flowers, the latter as pistillate or female flowers. The flowers, then, are *unisexual.* But as both kinds of flowers are on the same plants, they are called *monœcious* plants. Insects carry the pollen from one flower to the pistil of the other. To attract them there is honey at the base of the corolla, to reach which they must penetrate far into the flower, which is lined with thick hairs under which the honey lies. In the act of busily seeking after the sweet liquid, the insects cannot help touching the male or the female organs, as the case may be, and so fertilize the ovules.



Fig. 39.— Staminate flower of the Pumpkin (the front part of the corolla is removed to show the central organs).

Other Cucumbers and Gourds.

The Gourds grow well in the warmer parts of the earth, especially within the tropics. Many of them are cultivated for their eatable fruits, like the Common Gourd (*Cucurbita maxima*), the Pumpkin (*Cucurbita pepo*), the Melon (*Cucumis melo*), the Water Melon (*Citrullus vulgaris*), the Common Cucumber (*Cucumis sativus*), the Bottle Gourd (*Lagenaria vulgaris*), the Hīrekāyi (*Luffa acutangula*) and others, which are very much alike in their general habits and can be best distinguished by their various fruits.

Allied to the Cucumber Family is the **Passion Flower Family** (*Passifloreæ*), likewise climbers with tendrils. Some of them grow wild, others are cultivated in gardens for the sake of their peculiar flowers which have a very pretty corona of filiform appendages arising from the tube of the calyx.

The **Papaw Tree** (*Carica papaya*), a native of America, is another plant belonging to this family. The flowers are, like those of the Gourds, unisexual. The two kinds of flower, however, do not grow on the same plant, but on different plants. They are therefore called *diœcious*. The milky sap of the tree has the peculiar property of making raw meat tender by partly digesting it.

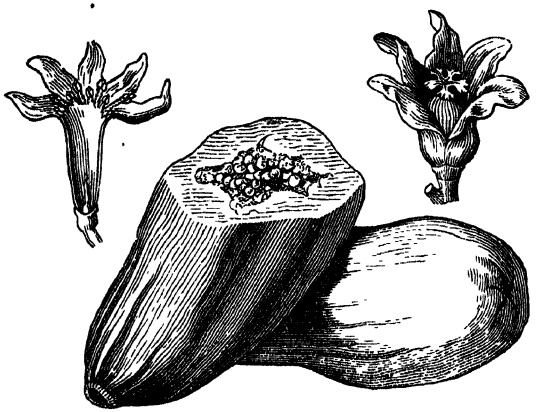


Fig. 40.—Staminate and pistillate flower of the Papaw tree. Below 2 fruits, one opened by a cross-cut showing the seeds.

SUB-CLASS 2.—SYMPETALÆ.

Plants with 2 floral envelopes: calyx and corolla. Corolla with united petals, the stamens generally inserted on it.

11. Order: The Coffee Family.

(Rubiaceæ.)

Trees, shrubs, or herbs with opposite simple leaves and stipules. Corolla regular, tubular, 4 or 5 lobed, stamens as many inserted on the corolla.

The Coffee Tree (*Coffea arabica*).

(Plate No. 633.)

(*Can.* Kāphi. *Mal.* Bunnu. *Tam.* Kāpi. *Tel.* Kāpi.)

1. Coffee is the seed of a small tree, cultivated in India, but a native of Arabia. Under cultivation the shrub is generally not allowed to grow more than 6 or 8 feet high (why?), but if left to itself would become a small tree.

The **Leaves** are oblong and pointed, the margins being slightly waved. They are placed opposite one another, and in such a way that every pair stands crosswise over the next lower pair (*decussate*). So also the many branches. This ensures the advantage of the stem being equally loaded. Their surface is smooth and shining, a property which prevents too rapid an evaporation of the sap in the leaves (*cf.* Mango tree, page 20).

2. The pretty white and rose-tinted **Flowers** stand in little clusters in the axils of the opposite leaves and have a most delicious fragrance. They are tubular with 4 or 5 narrow lobes (Plate No. 633, 3) which are twisted in the bud. These lobes thus protect, within them, the short-stalked stamens, which number as many as the lobes of the corolla, and are inserted at the mouth of the floral tube just between the lobes. There is one style (Plate No. 633, 4) with a 2-cleft stigma.



Fig. 41.—A fruit-bearing branch of the Coffee tree. On the right side a berry of which the upper part of the pulp is removed showing the 2 seeds.

3. When the flowers fade, the **Berries** come in their place. They are first green and become blood-red when ripe (5), bearing the segments of the calyx on the top. The fleshy pulp encloses 2 horny seeds lying face to face (6 and 7) within a kind of skin called the "parchment". They are flat on one side with a deep ridge, and on the other side curved (8 and 9). These are the so-called Coffee-beans.

A transverse section of the seed (10) shows how the seed-leaves are folded in it.

4. **Cultivation.**—The Coffee plant requires a well drained rich soil, as is found in hilly forests. It grows best in a humid climate, and frost is fatal to it. In hot and dry places Coffee is successfully grown in shade. The plants are reared from seed in a nursery and, when a year or two old, planted in their permanent places in the plantation generally under partial shade. As shade-trees such are preferred as go to enrich the soil, *e.g.*, *Bauhinia, Poinciana, Sesbania*, and other *Leguminosæ*. Coffee being an exhausting crop manuring is required.

5. **Enemies.**—The bug and the borer are dreaded enemies of Coffee plantations. The latter (*Clytus coffeophagus* or *Xylotreclus quadrupes*) is a little beetle whose larva lives under the bark and in the wood of the tree, eating its way through the wood up and down the tree and penetrating to the very end of the tap-root. Its presence in the Coffee tree becomes apparent by the sickly look of the tree, the older leaves becoming pale and the berries falling off unripe with the leaves. The best remedy suggested is the immediate removal and destruction of the affected tree and the scraping, rubbing and washing with acids of healthy ones to destroy the eggs deposited in the natural fissures of the bark.

6. **Preparation of Coffee.**—When ripe the fruit is gathered or shaken on cloths spread under the trees. The berries are then passed between rollers, which are close enough together to crush the fleshy part, but not close enough to crush the seeds. After being crushed the pulp is washed away, and the berries, still in their skin, are set to dry in the sun. When dry they are again passed between rollers set closer together which now break the skin. The broken skin is blown away, and the beans are sorted and packed.

The raw beans are greenish in colour, and do not smell or taste like coffee. When coffee is wanted, the beans must be roasted, *i.e.*, placed in an iron vessel, which is turned over a fire. The roasted beans are then ground to powder, on which boiling water is poured, and then we get our coffee.

This drink has a stimulating effect on our system, or, in other words, it rouses the nervous system to fresh activity, the sense of hunger is suppressed and the desire to sleep is driven away. This is due to a substance, called "Caffeine", contained in the Coffee beans. If this substance is taken in larger quantities, it acts as a poison; strong coffee, therefore, produces palpitation of the heart, congestion of blood in the brain, trembling of the muscles and similar affections of the nerves. Coffee is not a food in any way, but is merely a stimulant like alcohol.

Other Plants of the Coffee Family.

The **Scarlet Ixora** (*Ixora coccinea*—*Can.* Kēpala; *Mal.* Četti; *Tam.* Veḍḍi; *San.* Kisgāra, Pātalī) is a very common shrub growing wild on all our hills, and is a general favourite because of its beautiful, scarlet flowers and edible, crimson berries. The stem is woody and bears opposite, sessile leaves, which being tough and leathery keep green and enable the plant to flower even in the hottest and driest season of the year. The flowers are in dense clusters at the ends of the twigs. They consist of a long slender tube which spreads into a four-parted limb. The 4 yellow stamens are, just like those of the Coffee flower, short-stalked and inserted at the base of the limb between the lobes (fig. 42).

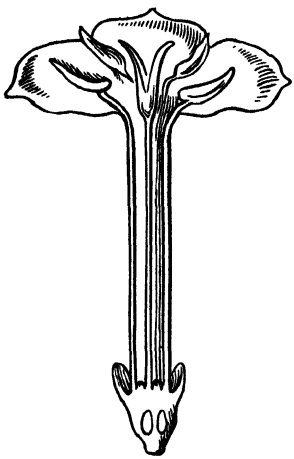


Fig. 42.—Flower of Ixora. The front part of the floral tube with the fourth lobe is removed and the ovary is cut open.

The **Cinchona Tree** (*Cinchona succirubra*) is a native of Peru, but is now cultivated in India also. Its bark contains a very bitter substance, called Quinine, which is a most valuable antidote against malarial fever.—*Mussænda frondosa* (*Can.* Belloṭṭi; *Mal.* Veḷḷila) is an ornamental shrub in our hedges. One of the sepals (segments of the calyx) develops into a large, white leaf which shows

the insects, on which the plant depends for fertilization, where the flowers are (compare Mango, page 22). — In gardens we often see the beautiful *Gardenia* with its white, sweet-smelling flowers, which sometimes "double" (compare Rose, page 38). — In *Morinda tinctoria* (*Can.* Maradarasina, Poppili; *Mal.* Nōṇāmaram; *Tam.* Nunāmaram; *Tel.* Mulugu; *San.* Dāruharidrā) the single flowers stand on a common receptacle. The fruits all grow together in one mass as they ripen, and look as if they resulted from a single flower (compare fruit of Ananas). A red dye is prepared from the root of this plant.

12. Order: The Composite Family.

(Compositæ.)

Usually herbs. Many single florets are gathered into a dense head with a broad receptale, which is often furnished with chaffy scales and surrounded by whorls of bracts so that the whole might be mistaken for a single, large flower. Florets: calyx reduced to scales or bristles; corolla either *tubular* or strap-shaped (*ligulate*); stamens 5 with free filaments but cohering anthers, which latter enclose the style. Fruit a dry, one-seeded case, called *achenium*, often crowned by a tuft of hairs, called *pappus*.

The Sunflower (*Helianthus annuus*).

(*Can.* Hottutirugana; *Tam.* and *Tel.* Sūryakānti.)

This is an annual herb from S. America which is now cultivated in gardens all over India. In some countries, chiefly in Southern Russia and in the Balkan states, it is also grown for its seeds, from which a valuable oil is made.

1. The young plants soon develop into strong and big herbs which sometimes attain a height of 3 yards. The thick **Stem** is branched only in its upper part. It forms a tube which is filled with loose pith.

2. The **Leaves** are large and cordate. If a thread be tied to the leaf-stalk of one of the lower leaves and then taken to the

second, third, and so on, above it, one can clearly see that the leaves are *spirally arranged* around the stem (fig. 43) so that, if a small plant is looked at from above, the leaves appear in the form of a rosette. By this arrangement each leaf gets the largest possible share of the sunlight.

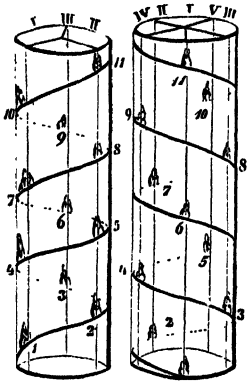


Fig 43.— Spiral arrangement of the leaves round stems.

The leaves *bend down to the ground* with their pointed ends, so that the *rain water* falling on them is *conducted outside.* With this fact the structure of the roots stands in beautiful harmony. The Sunflower plant being a tall herb, one would expect the roots to be long and strong so as to fix the plant firmly in the ground. But this is not the case. The side-roots are very short and do not stretch beyond the ends of the leaves. As a compensation for this they are, however, very numerous and divided into so many little branches that, if the plant is taken out of the soil, the earth sticks together forming, with the roots, a compact mass which can be shaken off only with much difficulty. The water that is drained off from the centre to the circumference of the plant, falls on the ends of the roots just in the same way as we have seen in the Mango tree (page 22), with one difference, namely, that, the leaves of the Sunflower plant being not close together, the rain also pours down within their circumference; consequently we find that the tiny sucking roots are not only arranged in a ring corresponding to the outer circle of the leaf-ends, but that they are also distributed all over within that circle.

3. The stem and branches bear each on their tips one great **Flower,** which turns its face towards the sun (hence the name!). If we cut vertically through such a "flower" (fig. 44), we can see that there are really many small flowers placed on one receptacle (*R.*). The whole is, therefore, not one flower, but an aggregate of flowers or a *head of flowers.* Hence the order to which the Sunflower belongs is called "composite". This bunch or head of

flowers is surrounded by several series of scaly leaves, called bracts (*B.*), which protect the florets under them when in bud. The florets are of two different kinds: those in the middle have a small, yellowish, tubular corolla (*tubular florets* 1, 2, 3, 4), whereas those on the margin possess a corolla stretched out in a long, yellow tongue (*ligulate florets, L.*).

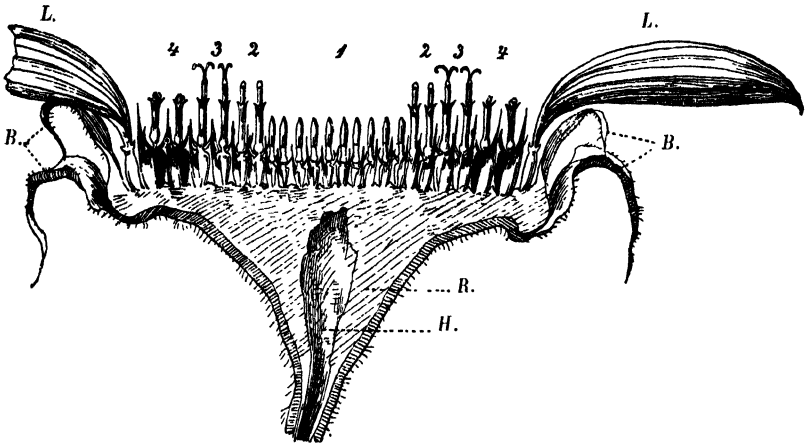


Fig. 44. — Longitudinal section of the head of the Sunflower. 1—4 Tubular florets; 1. not yet opened; 2. the pollen is pushed out of the flower tube; 3. the style protrudes and exposes its two-cleft stigma; 4. faded flowers. — *L.* Ligulate florets. *B.* Bracts. *R.* Common receptacle. *H.* Hollow part of receptacle and stem.

(*a*) *Tubular florets.* — The head of a Sunflower generally shows florets in various stages: those in the centre may be mere buds (1); then follow one or two circles of opened florets bearing clusters of pollen at their tops (2); then come florets with their forked styles visible (3); and finally florets which are faded, form the outer circles (4). Let us now examine one of the tubular florets. The ovary, we find, rests in a hole of the chaffy receptacle. It bears two small scaly leaves on it which represent the calyx-leaves (fig. 45, *Sc.*). In some species of this order, as for instance the Sow-thistle (*Sonchus oleraceus*) or Lettuce (*Lactuca*), these calyx-leaves crown the fruit, when ripe, with a feathery ring of hairs, called pappus, by which the wind carries the seed far away. The seeds of the Sunflower have no such pappus.

The corolla of the inner florets is, as already remarked, a narrow tube. At its base there is a ball-like enlargement, and the upper part of it ends in 5 small and pointed teeth. There are 5 stamens within the corolla tube whose filaments are separated, but whose pollen bags or anthers are joined into a tube (fig. 45, *A.*). The anthers open on their inner side and set the pollen free. The style (*Sty.*), while seeking its way through the very narrow tube of the anthers, cannot help pushing up the pollen out of the tube where the pollen accumulates in small clusters (fig. 45, 1). Insects that visit the flower are sure to remove it quickly with their bodies and legs. And then only the style opens its two-forked stigma in order to receive pollen from another flower (fig. 45, 2). It is a well-established fact that fertilization is generally achieved not by the pollen of the same flower, but by that of another. Self-fertilization generally produces seeds of an inferior and degenerated sort. We see in this case, as well as in many other plants, a wonderful contrivance for *cross-fertilization*.

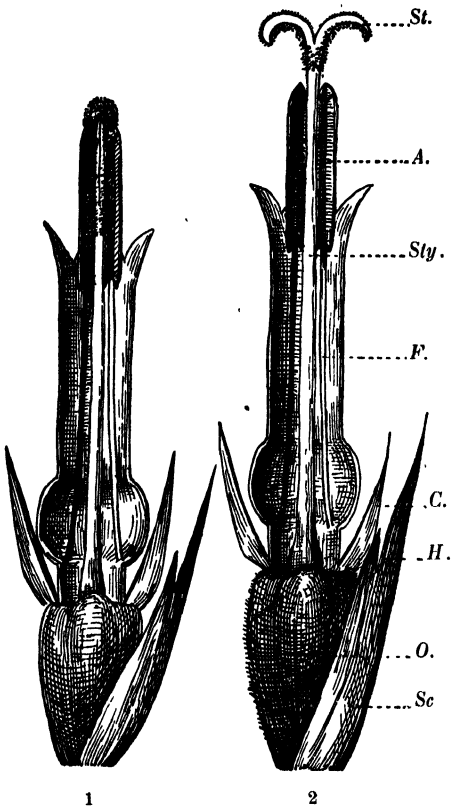


Fig. 45. — Tubular florets of Sunflower (5 times enlarged). The flower-tube is opened. *Sc.* Chaffy scale of the receptacle. *O.* Ovary. *C.* Calyx. *F.* Filament. *Sty.* Style. *A.* Tube of joined anthers (opened). *Sti.* Stigma. *H.* Spot where honey is secreted.

(*b*) *Ligulate florets.*—If insects have to render the flower this very important service, they must also be attracted by some means.

The flower contains honey in great quantities which is secreted at the base of the style and often fills the whole globular part of the tubular florets (fig. 45, *H.*). But a single floret would be so inconspicuous that it could hardly be noticed by the guests which are so eagerly expected. We see, now, how advantageous it is for the plant that the small inconspicuous florets should be placed together in large numbers forming heads of flowers (compare Mango, page 22). The effect of their being clustered is enhanced by the ligulate (tongue-shaped) florets on the margin. We seek in vain for styles and stamens in these flowers: they are sterile. But by *attracting the useful insects* they fulfil the purpose for which they were created.

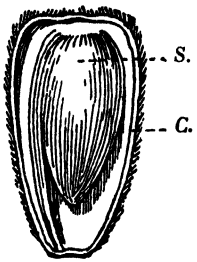


Fig. 46. — Fruit (*achenium*) of the Sunflower (opened). *S.* Seed. *C.* Seed-cover.

4. The **Fruit,** when ripe, does not open, but remains shut and is called an *achenium.* Each fruit contains one seed under its hard cover. When the wind shakes the tall plants one against the other, the seeds fall and from the effect of the blow are scattered around (*cf.* Poppy, page 6).

The seed contains a fatty oil which serves as food for the young plant growing out of it eventually.

Other Composites.

The Composite Family is the largest order of flowering plants, comprising about 12000 known species from all parts of the world. But the proportion of plants which can be used by man is comparatively small. Some are used in medicine; some are aromatic, abounding in volatile oil; a considerable number are used as salad or pot-herbs.

They are divided into 3 tribes:—

1. Heads with the florets all similar and tubular:

The Ash-coloured Fleabane (*Vernonia cinerea* — *Can.* Sahadēvi; *San.* Ardhaprasādana).

The Purple Fleabane (*Vernonia anthelmintica* — *Can.* Kāḍajīrige).

The Safflower (*Carthamus tinctorius* — *Can.* Kusubi).

Elephantopus scaber (*Can.* Nelamuccaḷa), the leaves of which appear in rosettes close to the ground at the beginning of rains, "and raise hopes of something good. Nothing more appears till about September, when a tall and promising stem shoots up, and, after further waiting, develops as plain and uninteresting a flower as could be seen" (A. K. Nairne).



Fig. 47.— Ligulate floret of Lettuce. *a*. Ovary. *b*. Pappus. *c*. Lower (tubular) part of corolla. *d*. Upper part of it. *e*. Joined anthers. *f*. Style. *g*. Free filaments.

Ageratum conyzoides (*Can.* Nāyituḷasi), an ill-weed, frequently met with in gardens, smelling like the leaves of the Tuḷasi plant.

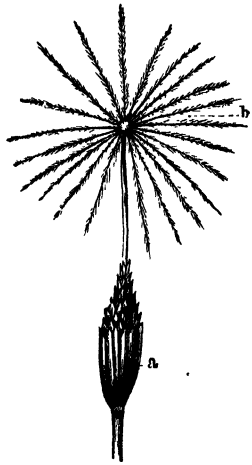


Fig. 48. Fruit of Lettuce. *a*. Achenium. *b*. Pappus.

Sphæranthus indicus (*Can.* Karaṇḍe), a prostrate weed that covers rice-fields in the cold weather.

2. Heads with the florets all similar and ligulate:
   Chrysanthemum indicum (*Can.* Sēvantige), a common pot-plant,
   Lactuca sativa, Lettuce (fig. 47 and 48),
   Sonchus oleraceus, Sow-thistle.

3. Heads with a ray of ligulate and a disk of tubular florets:
   The Sunflower (*Helianthus annuus*),
   Zinnia elegans,
   Dahlia variabilis,
   Cosmos sulphureus, all of them common garden plants, and
   Eclipta alba (*Can.* Garga; *Mal.* Kaiyaṇṇi), a much-prized medicinal weed.

13. Order: The Olive and Jasmine Family.

(Oleaceæ.)

Of this family various species of **Jasmine** (*Jasminum—Can.* Mallige) are grown in Indian gardens on account of the sweet scent and the beauty of their flowers. — They are all climbing shrubs with opposite leaves and regular flowers. While the sepals and petals are in fives, the stamens and carpels are two each.

The smell of the Jasmine flower is particularly strong in the evening. It also opens its blossoms not in the morning, like so many other flowers, but in the evening. This is surely not without good reason. If we look at the long and narrow tube, we may conclude that the honey at the bottom of the tube can be obtained only by insects with long tongues. Such are the moths that fly about at dusk. It is for this reason that the **flowers** *are white,* that they *open in the evening* and *exhale such a strong and sweet scent* at that time, and that they *bend over* and are not erect like the buds (compare *Clerodendron!*).



Fig. 49. — Flowering branch of the Olive Tree.

The Double Jasmine (*Jasminum sambac — Can.* Duṇḍumallige) is, like the Double Rose, a product of horticulture (see Rose, page 38). One of the wild species is *Jasminum rigidum* (*Can.* Kāḍumallige).

The shrub *Nyctanthes arbor-tristis* (*Can.* Pārijātaka; *Mal.* Pārijātakam; *Tam.* Pavalamallu; *Tel.* Krishṭi; *San.* Pārijāta) is also a Jasmine. The limb of the flowers is white, but their tube is orange-coloured. They fall off very freely in the early morning.

The **Olive Tree** (*Olea europœa*) (fig. 49) is not found in India, but is extensively grown in the countries round the Mediterranean Sea for the sake of the excellent oil obtained from the pulp of its fruit.

14. Order: The Dogbane Family.

(Apocynaceæ.)

Mostly shrubs, generally abounding in milky juice. Leaves opposite or whorled. Flowers regular, corolla-lobes 5, stamens 5. Fruit generally consisting of 2 narrow follicles.

The Rose Periwinkle (*Vinca rosea*).

(*Can.* Sadāmallige, Kempu Kāsigaṇagilu.)

1. This is a small shrub found everywhere in Indian gardens. It flowers throughout the year. Drought stops the growth of plants, and they generally drop their leaves. It does not seem to affect *Vinca rosea*, which remains green and flourishing when everything else is withering for want of water. What makes this little plant so hardy?

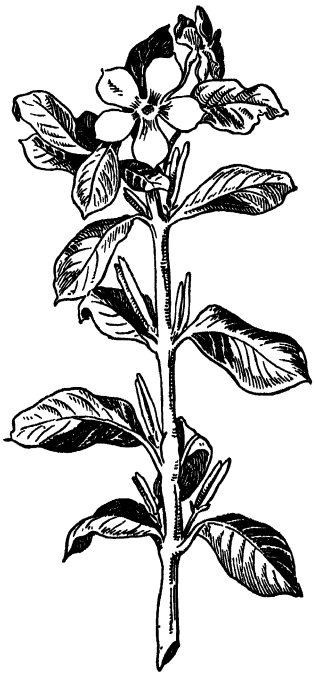


Fig. 50.— The Rose Periwinkle (*Vinca rosea*).

If you pull the plant up, you will notice that its **Roots** are long and extend beyond its branches. This enables it to get water from a greater space than most plants of its size can.

The **Stem** of Vinca does not grow high, but has numerous long branches, the tips of which only are erect. This enables the plant to shade the ground well, and consequently the sun and wind cannot dry it up to the same extent as they would do, if the plant were erect. Small plants, like Vinca, generally have a herbaceous stem which does not last for more than one season. Vinca has a strong woody stem, in which it can store up foodstuff and moisture for the time of need. This stem, moreover, is

covered with *a very tough and leathery bark* which will not easily allow the moisture contained in its inner layers to evaporate. The sap in the stem is, besides, very slimy, and slimy fluids, as a matter of fact, dry up very slowly (compare *Cactus*, page 42).

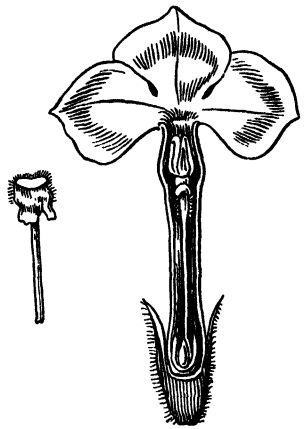


Fig. 51.— Flower of Vinca. The 2 front lobes and half of the floral tube are removed to show the stamens and the style. On the left side the upper part of the style with the hourglass-like stigma.

The elliptic **Leaves** of Vinca are placed opposite. They are shiny above and provided with a thick epidermis, which conditions reduce the evaporation (see Mango, page 20 and 21). Touch the leaves and you will see that, though they shine and appear glabrous or smooth, there is a fine *coat of downs* all round the epidermis. This also helps to reduce the evaporation, which we shall understand from a little experiment. Moisten 2 sponges of equal size and put them on the same place for drying, but wrap a piece of cloth round one of them. We shall find that the covered sponge keeps its moisture longer than the other. How does this happen? From both sponges water-vapour rises, but the vapour under the cloth cannot escape so freely as from the uncovered sponge, and so the rate of evaporation is slackened. Precisely the same happens with two leaves of which one is glabrous or uncovered and the other hairy or downy.

2. The **Flowers** grow in pairs in the axils of the leaves. The calyx is divided into 5 filiform segments. The corolla consists of a long cylindrical tube spreading at its upper end into 5 broad limbs, which are contorted in bud, but are at right angles to the tube, when open. The mouth of the tube, tinged with dark crimson, is slightly raised, surrounded by a corona of hairs, and very narrow. But a little below, the tube widens making room for 5 sessile stamens which form a cone under which the hourglass-like stigma of the long and slender style is situated. The latter

rises from the combined tip of 2 seed-vessels at the bottom of the floral tube (fig. 51).

Other Apocynaceæ.

Carissa spinarum (*Can.* Garji, Koriṇḍa; *Mal.* Karaṇṭa; *Tam.* Kali; *Tel.* Kalivi) is a common, thorny shrub, well fitted to thrive in dry regions, like Vinca, by the milky and slimy juice in all its parts, the tough bark of its woody stem, and the shining surface of its leaves. The flowers are very much like those of Vinca in the arrangement of the parts, the corolla lobes, however, being narrower. The fruit is not a dry seed-vessel like that of Vinca, but a purple berry with some 4 seeds, embedded in an exceedingly sticky but nicely flavoured pulp. They are edible, and as a result the seeds are carried by birds and animals to a distance from the mother plant, and the species is thus able to spread over the country. The fruits are also employed to make pickles and are considered superior even to the Maṇgo for these purposes.

Alstonia scholaris (*Can.* Hāle; *Mal.* Ērilapāla; *Tam.* Ēḷilappālai; *Tel.* Edakūla; *San.* Jīvani) is valued for its bark which is used in medicine.

Tabernæmontana coronaria (*Can.* Nandibaṭlu; *Mal.* Tagaram; *Tam.* Nandyāvaṭṭam; *Tel.* Nandivardhanamu; *San.* Vishṇupriya) is a favourite garden plant for its pure, white, fragrant flowers.

Allamanda grandiflora (*Can.* Arasina-hū, Seitāna-hū, Kēḷa) with its large, grotesque, bell-shaped, yellow flowers, and

the Oleander (*Nerium odorum* — *Can.* Kaṇagilu; *Mal.* Kaṇāvīram; *Tam.* Karavīram; *Tel.* Kastūripaṭṭe; *San.* Karavīrah) with its beautiful flower-bunches are likewise garden plants.

The Pagoda tree (*Plumieria acutifolia* — *Can.* Kāḍusampige: *Mal.* Veḷuttaraḷi; *Tam.* Īḷattalari; *Tel.* Aḍavigannēru) looks "ugly when out of leaf, from the swollen truncated branches, but beautiful when adorned with large, lanceolate leaves and fragrant, white flowers with yellow throats" (A. K. Nairne).

Cerbera odollam (*Can.* Ċaṇḍe; *Mal.* Utaḷaṃ; *Tam.* Kāṭaraḷi) lives in salt swamps, adorning them with its thick foliage and its large bunches of white flowers.

15. Order: The Milkweed Family.

(Asclepiadaceæ.)

Shrubs often twining, usually containing a milky juice. Leaves opposite. Flowers regular, corolla lobes 5, stamens 5. Anthers coherent, with the pollen masses resting upon the columnar stigma, forming a corona. Fruit consisting of 2 follicles. Seeds with a brush of hairs.

The Madar *(Calotropis gigantea).*

(Can. Ekka. *Mal.* Erikku. *Tam.* Arkkam. *Tel.* Arkamu. *Hind.* Madār. *San.* Arkāh.)

1. **Its Use.**—This plant generally grows wild. It yields a fibre in its seed-pods which is, however, almost worthless for textile purposes. But the *fibre* obtained from the stems of this plant is one of the strongest fibres known. The stems are cut into sticks about 18 inches long, dried in the sun for 2 or 3 days, battered afterwards, and then the outer bark is peeled off and the fibre picked out with teeth and fingers from the inner bark, and then twisted into rope for cordage or fishing nets (Mukerji, *Agriculture*).

2. The **Stem** and the **Leaves** abound in *milky juice*, which protects the plant in many respects. It is acrid and poisonous and makes the plant distasteful to cattle. The viscid resin contained in it causes it to clot readily so that wounds through which it oozes out are soon shut up, thus preventing germs of decay from entering into the body of the plant.—The *down* on the stem and on the underside of the leaves affords the plant protection against the withering influence of dry winds. Owing to this and the thickness of the epidermis, the plant is, in spite of the size of its leaves, in a position to remain green even during the hottest and driest part of the year. The leaves are pretty large, oblong, opposite and embrace the stem having very short petioles.

3. The **Flowers** grow in large umbels. The bluish, 5-lobed corolla is bell-shaped. Of peculiar interest is the structure of the essential or reproductive organs of this flower. What strikes us

first when we examine it, are 5 large, wax-like, bluish bodies, curiously recurved, alternating with the corolla lobes and arranged round a central column (fig. 52, 3). If we remove them carefully, we shall find in their cavity 2 seed-vessels with a style each. These, however, are united at the top and support a 5-rayed



Fig. 52.—The Madar *(Calotropis gigantea)*, reduced.
2. A complete flower. 3. The flower stripped of the corolla showing the curved appendages round the seed-vessels. 4. The two seed-vessels, stripped of the appendages.

stigma (fig. 52, 4). At each corner of this cake-like stigma a sticky gland is to be seen, to which 2 club-shaped pollen masses are attached, each of them belonging to two distinct anthers. This is evidently a contrivance for cross-fertilization by the agency of insects (compare Orchids!). The pollen masses, by means of their glands, stick to the head of an insect when it comes in search of honey. It carries the pollen away to another flower

where the greater stickiness of the stigma detaches some or all the pollen from the insect, and the flower is thus fertilized.

4. The **Fruit** is made up of two large, ovoid capsules, called follicles, each splitting up in one line and containing numerous

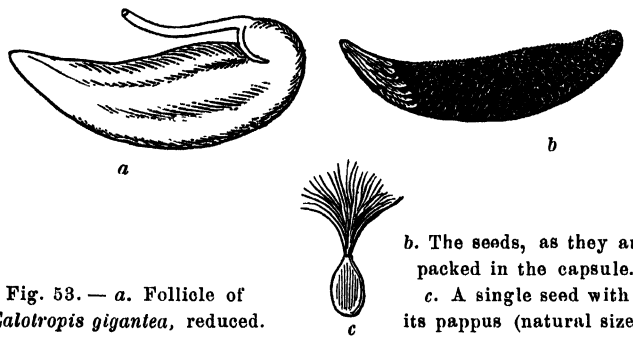


Fig. 53. — *a*. Follicle of *Calotropis gigantea*, reduced. *b*. The seeds, as they are packed in the capsule. *c*. A single seed with its pappus (natural size).

seeds packed together in beautiful order. Each seed is crowned with silky hair. When ripe the feather expands like an umbrella, which, caught by the wind, will be carried away to a great distance with the seed attached to it beneath. Compare this pappus with that found in some Composites (page 56). In this case the hairs are formed inside the carpel, whereas in the Composites it is the persistent calyx on the top of the carpels which grows into long hairs and forms the means of transport.

5. Most of the other Asclepiadaceæ are climbers. One of them, *Hemidesmus indicus* (*Can.* Nāmadabēru; *Mal.* Nannāri; *Tam.* Nannāri; *San.* Bhadravalli), affords the so-called Indian Sarsaparilla.

16. Order: The Bindweed Family.

(Convolvulaceæ.)

This is a tropical order of plants of singular beauty. Most of them are **Twiners**, like the Bean, and have very handsome flowers. The Sweet Potato (*Ipomœa batatas*) is cultivated for its tubers (see Potato!). Some Bindweeds are grown in gardens, such as the Moon-flower Creeper (*Ipomœa bona-nox*) and the

Indian Forget-me-not (*Ipomœa quamoclit*). Others again grow wild and cover the hedges with the inextricable net of their stems. Some of these plants creep along the ground such as the Sweet Potato (*Ipomœa batatas*), the Goat's-Foot Creeper (*Ipomœa biloba*) and Vishṇukrānti (*Evolvulus alsinoides*). Their habits are very much like those of the Cucumber (see page 45). They form, however, unlike the Gourds, adventitious roots at their nodes, which property accounts for the mode of their propagation by stem-cuttings.

Others are erect and by winding round any support they can reach (compare Bean, page 34), raise their tops to the full sunlight, like the Elephant Creeper (*Argyreia speciosa*—*Can.* Samudrahāle), or the common Garden Bindweeds *Ipomœa bona-nox, Ipomœa coccinea, Ipomœa quamoclit* and others.

The **Flowers** are generally funnel- or bell-shaped. There are 5 stamens and one forked pistil. The fruit is a capsule with usually 4 large seeds.

17. Order: The Nightshade Family.

(Solanaceæ.)

Herbs or shrubs, many of which are poisonous. Leaves never opposite, generally alternate. Flowers regular. Corolla funnel- or bell-shaped. lobes 4 or 5. Ovary two-celled. Fruit a berry or a capsule.

(*a*) The Potato (*Solanum tuberosum*).

(Plate No. 622.)

(*Can.* Uraḷagaḍḍe. *Mal.* Urulakiḻaṅu. *Tam.* Uraḷakiḻaṅgu. *Hin.* Baṭāṭā.)

1. **Importance of the Tuber.**—The part of the Potato plant generally seen by us is the *tuber*. This grows in the ground, but is not the root of the plant. For, if we closely examine the tubers, we shall find buds and also scale-like leaves which never occur on roots, but only on parts of the stem; and we thus see that the *tuber is only a swollen stem growing under-ground.* If the tubers are planted, new plants will grow out of each of these

buds. Even if one of the latter is cut out and planted in the soil, it may grow into a new plant. From this it is evident that the tuber is of great importance to the life of the Potato plant.

Let us examine the tubers a little more closely. If we take 2 potatoes of equal size, peel one of them and expose them both to the sun, we shall after some time notice that the one that was peeled shrivels together, whereas the other remains unchanged. The former has lost a great deal of the water it contained. If you plant it — of course, without removing the buds, — no plant will grow out of it, for the buds are withered. So we see that it is the *skin of the tuber* which *protects it from withering*. This skin, we are told, consists of the same substance as cork. And we know that cork is almost the best material available for preventing the evaporation of liquids which are kept in bottles. Besides, the cork-coat with which the inner part of the tuber is covered, serves as a protection against any hurtful influence from outside. Its bitter taste, for instance, saves the tuber from attacks of insects.

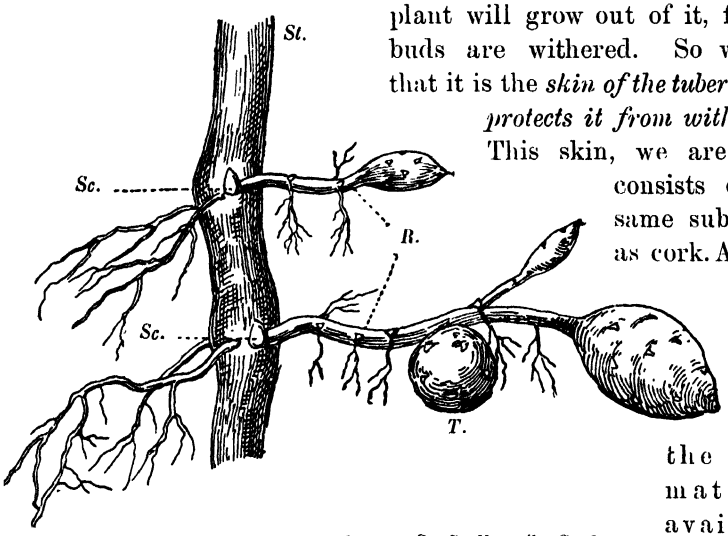


Fig. 54.— Formation of Potato tubers. *St.* Stalk. *Sc.* Scaly leaves. *R.* Runners. *T.* Tubers.

It is by means of these tubers that *the Potato plant can endure the hot and dry season.* At the end of the season the plant is full grown and has formed flowers, fruit, and seeds, as well as a number of tubers under the ground attached to the mother plant by string-like, horizontal runners (fig. 54, *R.*). It will now, for want

of moisture in the soil, wither and die down to the tubers which, protected under the ground, preserve the germ of life in their buds. In the following year, when the soil gets moist again, the buds begin to grow just as they do on any branch. The shoot has no roots at first and must, therefore, get all its food from the supplies stored up in the tuber, and this causes the tuber to shrivel up and die as the food stored in it is exhausted. The new shoots in their turn throw out roots and other underground shoots, portions of the latter being filled with starch and swelled up to form fresh tubers (fig. 54). As, in their uncultivated state, the tubers of the Potato plant remain in the ground and give rise to a large number of new plants, it is of great advantage to the new generation that the tubers are produced at the ends of runners, and are thus separated from one another.

We see now clearly that the *potato-tuber is* merely *a store of food for the new plant.* This food consists mainly of starch, which is also one of the principal food-substances of man. As the potato-tuber contains no noxious properties and is easily obtained in large quantities, it has become one of the chief vegetables we eat. It is now cultivated nearly all over the world, but does not grow well in the tropics.

2. **Leaves, Flowers, and Fruit.**—The stem of the Potato plant does not, as a rule, grow higher than about 1½ feet. The *leaves* are large and feathery or pinnate. But the leaflets are not all of the same size as they are, for instance, in the pinnate leaf of the Tamarind tree. Between the larger pinnates we find smaller ones. The leaves contain a poison which is also to be found in all other green parts of the plant and especially in the berry.

The **Flower**, like the flower of the Chillies or of the Brinjal, consists of a calyx with 5 segments, a disk-shaped corolla with 5 lobes, and 5 yellow stamens whose large pollen bags are united at their ends so as to form a cone surrounding the pistil (Plate No. 622, 5 and 7). The anthers open by pores.

The **Fruit** is a round, green berry with many seeds in 2 cells (Plate No. 622, 6 and 9) which, however, cannot be depended on to produce plants which will give fine tubers. They are, therefore, not used except by nursery men who hope to obtain new varieties.

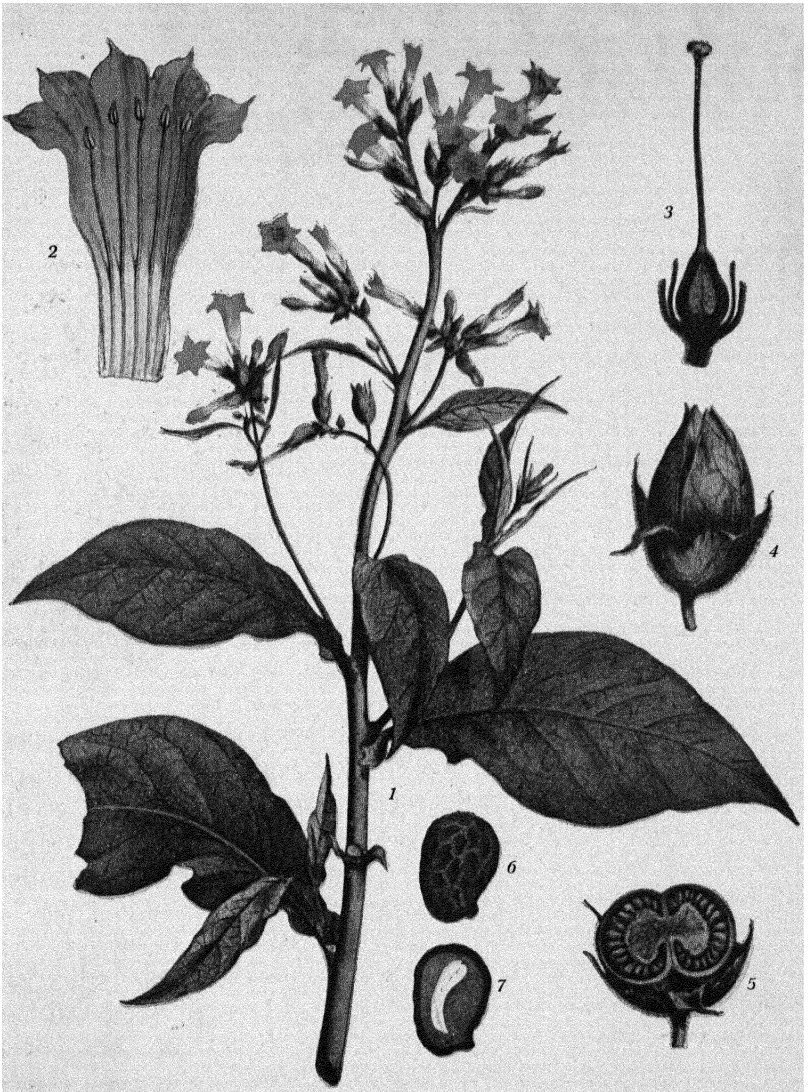


Fig. 55. — Tobacco *(Nicotiana tabacum)*.

2. Flower laid open. 3. Pistil. 4. Ripe capsule. 5. Transverse section of capsule. 6. Seed. 7. Section of it.

(*b*) The Tobacco Plant (*Nicotiana tabacum*).

(Plate No. 621.)

(Can. Hogesoppu. *Mal.* Pukayila. *Tam.* Pugaiyilai. *Hin.* Tambāku.*)*

1. This plant has come from America, like the Potato.

All parts of it are covered with sticky, glandular hairs to keep off animals. The very large **Leaves** decrease in size towards the upper part, thus giving the lower leaves the share of sunlight which they need for the proper exercise of their functions. You will notice, too, that the leaves are almost all bent down at their tips. The plant has a deep, vertically growing taproot with side roots growing horizontally. The latter, however, do not go beyond the circumference of the leaves and they, therefore, have their tender sucking parts just below the tips of the leaves. We see now clearly why the leaves are bent down. When it rains, all the water does not run along the leaf-stalks to the inner part of the plant, but a great deal flows outwards to where the tips of the roots are waiting for their nourishment (see Mango tree, page 22). The rest goes into the soil, where it is protected from evaporation and can sink in to the deeper lying roots.

2. The stalk bears at its end great bunches of tubular **Flowers,** which are either white or red. The 5 stamens are inserted in the tube of the corolla (Plate 621, 2). The **Fruit** is a capsule which grows under the cover of the calyx, and, when ripe, opens in two valves.

3. In growing the plant for **Tobacco** the stem is nipped off when it reaches a height of about 12 inches and is not allowed to flower. Why? Evidently to aid the formation of the leaves out of the material that might be wasted in the production of flowers and seeds. When the leaves are fully grown, the plant is cut down and left in the field for several days, after which, early in the morning when there is still dew on them, they are removed in bundles of 40 or 50 leaves. If the leaves are too dry and there is no dew on them, water is sprinkled on the leaves before removal. These bundles are then put in a stack where they are frequently re-arranged from top and bottom

to middle and from middle to outside. During this process of curing a fermentation by the agency of certain bacteria takes place. After about two months the leaves are ready for smoking, chewing or making into snuff.

Tobacco contains a poison, called *Nicotine,* of which a single drop suffices to kill a dog. Continuous excessive use of tobacco produces heart and bowel diseases, and can bring on the entire ruin of the body. For children tobacco, taken even in small quantities, is a dangerous poison.

(*c*) Other Nightshades.

The following species have berries:—

Solanum indicum and *Solanum Jacquinii* (*Can.* Gulḷa; *Mal.* Vaḷutina), which are two very common shrubs, prickly all over. *Atropa belladonna* is poisonous, but a very valuable medicine; it grows, however, only in the temperate zone.

The **Brinjal** (*Solanum melongena*—*Can.* Badane; *Mal.* Vaḷutina; *Tam.* Vaḷudalai; *Tel.* Vaṅkāyi; *Hin.* Baiṅgan) produces the well-known egg-like fruit. Cultivated are also the **Tomatoes** (*Lycopersicum esculentum,* Plate No. 635 — *Can.* Čapparabadane; *Mal.* Pĕtakkāḷi; *Tam.* Erumaittakkāḷi; *Tel.* Takkāḷi). The so-called **Cape Gooseberry** (*Physalis peruviana* — *Can.* Boṇḍuḷa; *Mal.* Moṭṭāmpuḷi) is very common in India. Its calyx is inflated and wholly covers and protects the edible orange-coloured fruit.

Capsular fruits are found in the following:—

The **Chillies** (*Capsicum frutescens,* Plate No. 635 — *Can.* Meṇasu; *Mal.* Pareṅgimuḷakŭ; *Tam.* Miḷagāyi; *Tel.* Mirapakāyi; *Hin.* Lālmirči). The long, scarlet capsules of the Chillies are used as a condiment, and the plant is, therefore, widely cultivated. A transverse section of the fruit (fig. 56, 2) shows that they are made up of 2 carpels. There are a great variety of shrubby Chillies in India. They are generally allowed to stand not longer than one season, as their fruits become very inferior after the first year.

The **Thornapple** (*Datura stramonium* — *Can.* Dattūra, Ummatta; *Mal.* Ummattam; *Tam.* Ummattai; *Tel.* Ummetta)



Fig. 56. — Chilli Plant *(Capsicum frutescens)*.

is a common weed with a strong, disagreeable smell. Its large leaves are deeply toothed, the two sides generally being unsymmetrical. They are spirally arranged round the stem and

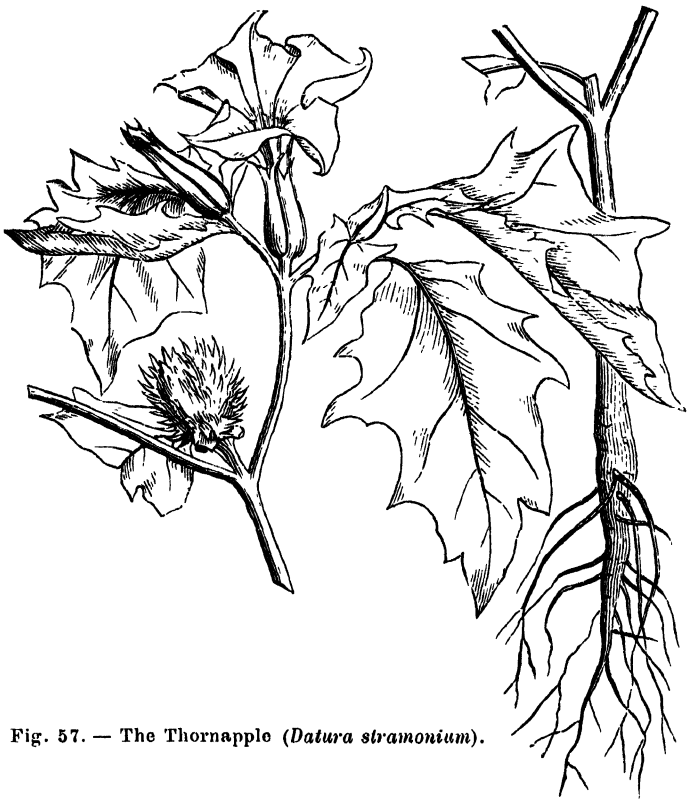


Fig. 57. — The Thornapple (*Datura stramonium*).

its numerous branches. It is interesting to note that they are so placed that none of them shades another. The petal of the flower forms a large funnel of a pure, white colour. It opens at nightfall and exhales a strong smell which, like the white colour, attracts moths to transfer the pollen from one flower to another. The capsules, which open in four valves, are covered with many prickles,—a protection for the numerous seeds, which, though they are poisonous to man, are eaten by several birds. These seeds are used medicinally.

18. Order: The Butterwort Family.

(Lentibulariaceæ.)

Carnivorous, aquatic and marsh plants. Corolla two-lipped and spurred. Stamens 2.

The Bladderwort (*Utricularia stellaris*).

1. **Its Adaptation to Living in Water.** — The plant floats in stagnant water and has *no roots*. It cannot exist in running water. Its *leaves* are entirely submerged and divided into many filiform segments so that they look like roots. By their division into hundreds of parts the surface is enormously increased. The greater the surface of the leaves the more the area available for absorbing food. For even though they are in the water, they obtain the necessary food-stuffs from the air which is contained in water. Here and there we notice *inflated bags* at the base of the branches; they evidently serve the plant as swimming belts to keep it near the surface. For the plant is small, and in order to raise its flower above the water, it must swim near the surface. The flowers have a spurred, two-lipped, yellow petal and 2 stamens.

2. **An Insectivorous Plant.** — But the plant leads an extraordinary life not only in so far as it lives in water, but also because it feeds on animal substances. It is an insectivorous plant. To catch its prey it is provided with curious traps, which we shall now examine. If the ordinary Utricularia, which has yellow flowers and is floating in quiet waters, cannot be obtained, the student may find another species of the same genus that grows in every paddy-field. It is a lovely, blue-blossomed twiner, named *Utricularia reticulata*, with a few inconspicuous leaves, which sinks its roots into the soft mud of the rice-field. Take it out very carefully, wash away the mud, and examine it! There you will find little knobs, here and there, of the size of a pepper corn or a little smaller. These knobs are the traps. They are hollow bladders with an opening surrounded by a few hairs, and shut by a valve (fig. 58, *K*.) that opens towards the

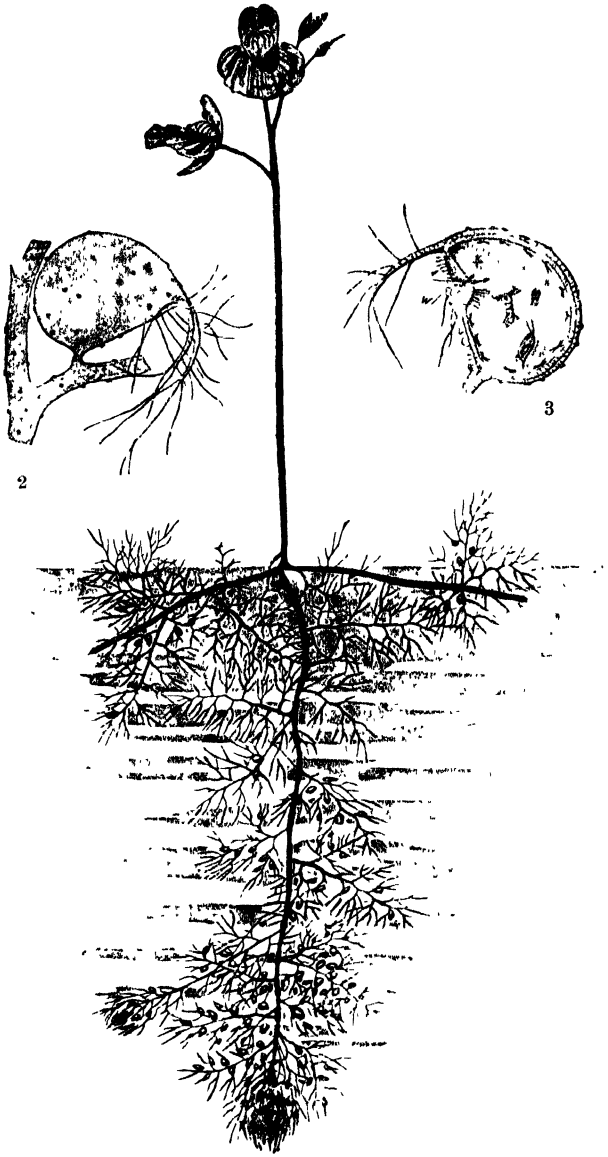


Fig. 58. — 1. A flowering branch of the Bladderwort *(Utricularia stellaris)*, ½ natural size. 2. Trap as seen from without. 3. Vertical section of the trap (10 times enlarged). *K.* Valve. *W.* Abutment. Two water animals are imprisoned in bladder 3.

interior. Little snails and crustaceans that happen to seek shelter in these bladders, can easily enter, guided by special growths at the entrance of the trap, but they cannot get out again and are thus imprisoned, as the valves do not open towards the outer side. After a few days the little animals die, decay and are absorbed by the plant.

There is another insectivorous plant, very common in swamps and moist places at the end of the rainy season, which deserves our notice also (fig. 59). It is called *Drosera indica,*

meaning **Indian Sundew,** which name it received from the fact that the numerous hairs on its linear leaves bear each a drop of a liquid which looks like dew (fig. 61). It is, however, not dew, for it does not disappear towards midday and evening; nor is it honey as many might think, when they see the drops. Touch

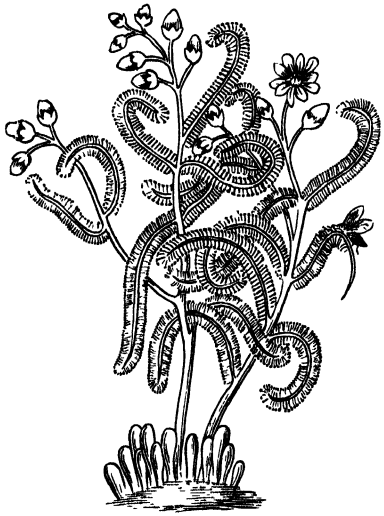


Fig. 59. — Indian Sundew (*Drosera indica*). Natural size.

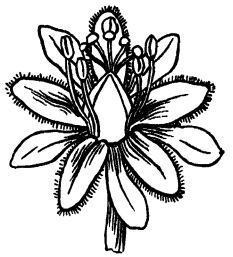


Fig. 60. — Flower of *Drosera indica.*

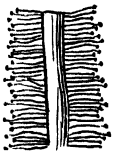


Fig. 61. — Glands on the leaves of *Drosera indica* (enlarged).

it, and you will find that it is a sticky mass which can be drawn into long threads. This liquid is produced by glands at the ends of the hairs. Very often we find also bodies of dead insects on them. How did these bodies come there? The insects happened to alight upon, or run over, the leaves, the gummy liquid on the hairs caught them and held them fast, the neighbouring hairs also bent over and fastened on to them. This is carried to such an extent that the whole blade of the leaf occasionally doubles over. In course of time the insect dies and the soft parts of it are then digested by the liquid which is slightly acid, as can be told by touching a piece of blue litmus paper with the drops.

The flowers of Drosera (fig. 60) are regular, having 5 sepals, 5 pink-coloured petals, 5 stamens, and 5 styles.

19. Order: The Sesamum Family.

(Pedaliaceæ.)

The Gingelly or Til (*Sesamum indicum*).

(*Can.* Ellu. *Mal.* Kārellu. *Tam.* Ellu. *Tel.* Guvvulu. *San.* Tilah.)

1. **Leaves, Flowers, and Fruit.** — The Til is an annual herb cultivated over the whole of India for the oil extracted from its seed. It has opposite, ovate leaves, the lower ones being often lobed. Leaves cannot do their work properly unless they get sufficient light; so while the plant has its lower leaves large and spreading, the *upper ones are* considerably *smaller* and *slant upwards.*

The flowers are large and handsome. The *corolla* is *bell-shaped* and hangs down, protecting the delicate inner organs from rain or dew. As soon as the petal falls off, the flower-stalk becomes *erect* so that the seed-box can better expose its seeds to the wind. For, if the capsules remained hanging, the seeds could only fall vertically and would not be dispersed. When cultivated, the seeds are, of course, not allowed to drop. Nature provides for the plant growing wild and therefore gives it the means of scattering the seed as much as possible.

2. **Accommodation to Conditions.** — The whole plant is covered with woolly hair. This coat of hairs reduces evaporation by interfering with the free circulation of air on the surface of the leaf (see Vinca, page 59). Excessive loss of moisture through the epidermis would cause the plant to wither, as it would not be in a position to make up for this loss by the sucking action of the roots.

The plant wisely accommodates itself to the conditions under which it is forced to live. Plants growing during the rains have generally larger and broader leaves; so also those which grow in the shade. Their epidermis is thinner, and they are less hairy. But plants which grow during the dry season reduce the surface of their leaves to a minimum and protect themselves with a rough, thick and very hairy epidermis. They are also usually very stunted.

20. Order: The Acanthus Family.

(Acanthaceæ.)

This order is largely represented in India. The general structure of the plants is very much like that of the next two orders (*Labiatae* and *Verbenaceae*). The fruit and seed afford distinctive characters, the ovary being two-celled, undivided and the seeds usually attached by hooks to the middle part of the ovary. Another distinctive mark of the order are the conspicuous bracts which, in many examples, partly conceal the flowers.

A good type of this order is the **Sea-Holly** or Bear's-Breech (*Acanthus ilicifolius* — *Can.* Hoḷečuḷḷi; *Mal.* Payiñāčuḷḷi; *Tam.* Kaḷutaimuḷḷi), remarkable for its spinous, holly-like leaves. The dismal salt marches in which it grows, are often beautified by this handsome shrub with its lovely, blue flowers.

Adhatoda vasica (*Can.* Āḍusōge; *Mal.* Āṭalōṭakam; *Tam.* Āḍoḍai; *Tel.* Aḍḍasaramu) is a common shrub of little beauty.

Barleria prionitis (*Can.* Muḷḷugōraṇṭe, *Mal.* Čemmuḷḷi), growing on the margin of rivulets, is armed with needle-like spines.

Andrographis paniculata (*Can.* Urakiriyātu; *Mal.* Nilavēpu; *Tam.* Nilavēmbu; *Tel.* Nelavēmu), and *Gymnostachyum febrifugum* (*Can.* Nelamuččaḷa) are valuable medicine plants.

21. Order: The Labiate Family.

(Labiatæ.)

Plants with square stems, decussate leaves, and labiate (two-lipped) flowers. Stamens 4: 2 longer and 2 shorter. Style one, inserted between the lobes of the ovary, stigma bifid. Fruit of 4 dry, one-seeded nutlets, within the bottom of the calyx. Mostly aromatic plants.

(*a*) The Tumbe Plant (*Leucas linifolia*).

(*Can.* Tumbe. *Mal.* Tumpa. *Tam.* Tumbai. *San.* Rudrapushpa.)

This plant appears with the rains everywhere, near roads, ditches, hedges, and flowers as long as there is any moisture in the ground.

1. **Accommodation to Conditions.** — The **Leaves** are linear, serrate, and decussate, *i. e.* they are so arranged that every pair stands crosswise over the next lower pair. So are also the many branches. This affords it the advantage of the stem being equally loaded.

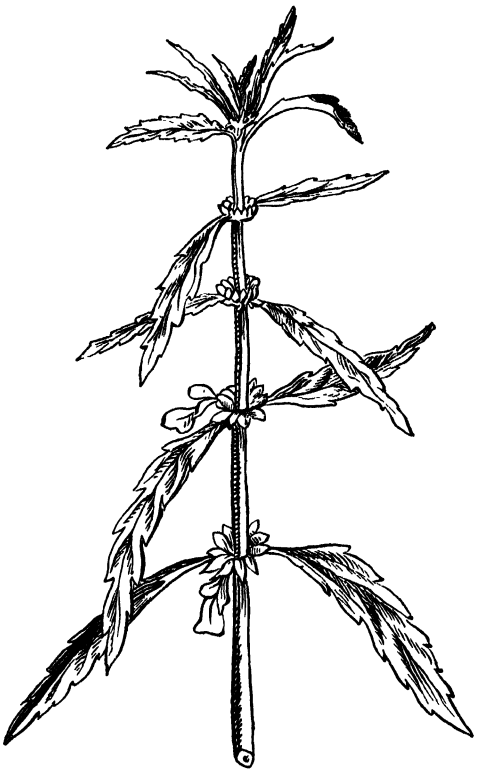


Fig. 62. — Tumbe (*Leucas linifolia*).

If we compare Tumbe plants that *grow in moist and shady places* with such as grow in *dry and sunny ones,* we shall find that the former have always larger and more delicate leaves than the latter. We shall learn something from this fact.

Those plants which are growing in the shade of a tree, naturally get less sunlight. Their leaves must, therefore, be larger so as to get a greater quantity of the light that is not so intense. A small amount of the intense sunlight, which can be obtained by the small, nearly linear leaves of the specimens growing uncovered, is more than sufficient for their growth. Further, those in shady and moist places will, if plucked, fade much sooner than the other kind. Why? Since the place where they stood, is always moist, they need not be economical with water and their leaves are therefore large and tender. They lack the various means of checking the evaporation of water, such as a thick epidermis, a small surface, etc. (contrast it to Cactus, page 42).

The same will be found if *plants growing on a rich and a poor soil* are compared. The difference in this case is, however, caused principally by the quantity of food the plants are able to extract from the soil; hence the root-system of those growing in the rich soil will be found to be much larger than that of plants which grew in a poor soil.

2. The **Stem** has not only to bear its own weight and that of the branches with their leaves, but it must also be able to resist the bending, twisting, and breaking influences of the wind. If the stem is bent by a rush of wind to one side, the parts on that side of the stem towards which it is bent will be pressed together, whereas the other side will be stretched by the tension exerted on it. The middle part will naturally suffer least. Therefore *the* **sides** *of the stem should be strongest.* Now, if the stem of the plant is cut across (fig. 63), it will at once be seen that this is really the case. There are four strong fibres at the four corners of the stem which thus becomes quadrangular.

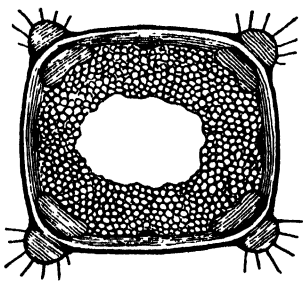


Fig. 63. — Transverse section of the stem of a Labiate plant, *Lamium album* (40 times enlarged).

And as every architect is careful to make his work as strong as possible with the least amount of material, so we see here also that the middle part which, as we have seen, has not to contribute anything towards the strength of the stem, remains *hollow* or *filled with soft pith only.*

Moreover, a simple experiment will show that it is easier to break a long tube than a short one. We, therefore, find the stem of the plant divided into different short pieces by *nodes* at the parts from where the leaves issue. These nodes are solid. The pieces between the nodes are termed internodes.

3. The **Flowers** of the plant should be noted, as they have the typical shape of the flowers of the order to which it belongs (*Labiatæ*). They are arranged in whorls on the nodes of the upper part of the stems. Each flower is short-stalked and sits in a bell-

shaped calyx (fig. 64). The lower part of the corolla is a tube which in its upper parts deeply *splits into two lips*. The lower lip is broad and forms the conspicuous part of the flower, attracting by its white colour insects, which know quite well that flowers usually contain sweet honey. If you pull out one of the flowers and suck it, you will find that there really is a tiny drop of honey in them. The upper part is smaller and shelters, under its hairy hood or helmet, *4 stamens* of which two are a little longer than the two others.

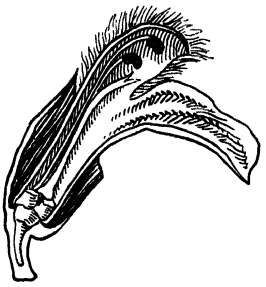


Fig. 64. — Vertical section of the flower of Tumbe *(Leucas linifolia)*, only 2 stamens are visible.

If you now put a pencil into the throat of the flower, the stamens will slightly protrude from their sheltered place and rub themselves against the pencil. The same thing happens when a bee or other insect thrusts its proboscis into the flower-tube to fetch the honey. The stamens bend forward and deposit their pollen-grains on the back of the bee, which carries it to another flower where the pollen will fall on the two-cleft stigma, which is at the end of a long style rising from between the four-lobed ovary, and thus fertilize the ovules in the seed-box.



Fig. 65. — Lipflower of *Salvia* and Bee.

The stamens of *Salvia* (fig. 65) have connectives which are pushed back by the visiting insect and cause the anthers to bend down in a large bow.



Fig. 66. — The Fruit of Tumbe *(Leucas linifolia)*. Front part of the calyx tube removed.

The **Fruit** is composed of 4 little, one-seeded nuts at the base of the persistent calyx (fig. 66). When ripe they separate, and the gentlest wind can shake them out of their case

(*b*) The Tulasi Plant (*Ocimum sanctum*).

(Plate in preparation.)

(*Can.* Tulasi. *Mal.* Śiva-tuḷasi. *Tam.* and *Tel.* Tuḷasi. *San.* Kṛishṇamūḷa.)

This is a nice little plant which can be seen in front of most Hindu houses. It is a symbol of chastity and modesty. Its structure is very much the same as that of Tumbe. The lips of the small purple flower are, however, a little different. The lower lip is narrow and small, whereas the upper lip is 4-lobed, and the stamens project outside. The aroma so characteristic of the plant is due to the presence of an ethereal oil secreted by small glandular hairs scattered over the surface of the stems and leaves.

(*c*) Other Labiates.

This family is but poorly represented in the tropics. They are chiefly found in the northern temperate zone, where they thrive best in a dry, sunny situation like most aromatic plants. A common Indian species is besides Leucas and Tulasi, Sweet Basil (*Ocymum basilicum* — *Can.* Kāmakastūri; *Mal.* Ramatuḷasi).

22. Order: The Verbena Family.

(Verbenaceæ.)

Plants resembling those belonging to the *Acanthaceae* and *Labiatae*. The distinction of the 3 orders lies in the structure of the ovary. The Verbena Family has a 4-celled ovary with a terminal style. The ovules are not attached by a hooked process, and the fruit is rarely capsular, being mostly a drupe or a berry.

The Teak Tree (*Tectona grandis*).

(*Can.* Tēgu, Sāgōni. *Mal.* Tēkku. *Tam.* Tēkku. *Tel.* Tēku. *Hin.* Sāgvān. *San.* Tēka.)

1. **Trunk and Wood.**—The Teak tree is one of the most useful timber-trees of Western India. Its wood, being fairly hard and very durable, is especially useful for ship-building. It also contains an oil which preserves the nails driven into it.

If the trunk is sawn through, a number of concentrical circles can be seen. These are found also in most other trees and are called *annual rings*, as one ring is generally formed in a year (fig. 14, page 19). They consist of alternate layers of soft and hard wood. This may be tested with the point of a knife. The soft wood is formed during the rapid and luxuriant growth of the tree during the monsoon, when it is covered with its enormous leaves and there is plenty of moisture, and the leaves are absorbing large quantities of carbonic acid gas from the air. The hard and dark rings of wood, however, represent the cessation of growth during the cold and dry season, when the tree drops all its leaves and stretches its bare branches towards the brazen sky. We can, therefore, estimate the age of the tree by counting its rings; for every dark, hard ring corresponds to a dry season, and every light, soft ring to a rainy season.

Trees of this class (Dicotyledons or Exogens) add wood to their trunks every year. This addition of wood is not made in the centre of the trunk but under the bark. If the bark is stripped off at the time when the tree is growing vigorously, we always find a sticky, watery fluid between bark and wood. This is the sap mixed with tender cell-walls which are dividing rapidly and have not had time to harden. The wood on the outside of the stem is lighter coloured than that in the centre, which is golden yellow when fresh cut. The layers are called *sapwood and heartwood* respectively. It is in the outer part of the wood, and not in the old wood in the middle of the tree, that the sap flows up from the roots to the tips of the branches to produce there, together with the food taken in by the leaves, new leaves, flowers and fruit. As new layers are formed one by one every year, the older layers cease to take any active part in the life-work of the tree, and harden. The hardest and most durable wood is the heartwood which being gradually impregnated by the waste products formed in the course of the growth of the tree, becomes denser and denser. A white deposit is also found in cavities in the wood which consists of lime (*Calcium Phosphate*).

2. The **Leaves** of the Teak tree are very large. They are *opposite*, and every pair of leaves stands crosswise to the next

pair (decussate). In this way the load of the great leaves is evenly distributed as in the Labiatæ. We can also see that the stems of young branches are quadrangular and channelled, and that they have large, quadrangular pith.

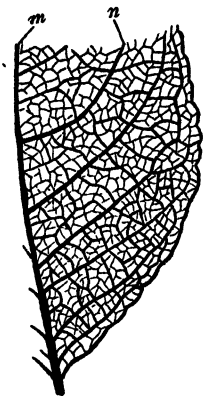


Fig. 67. — A net-veined leaf.
m. Strong midrib.
n. Side-rib.

The leaves are very rough on their upper side. The lower side is clothed with dense, grey hairs. It also shows a beautiful *network of veins* or ribs. We can guess why the ribs of these large leaves are so strong. It is, no doubt, because they are so large that they require also a strong frame-work to support them.

In *the dry season* the *leaves fall down.* And this is a good thing too. For they have such a large surface that the tree would lose too much moisture by them, and would wither and die, if the leaves should remain on the branches.

Preparation for the fall of the leaves is made long before they actually fall. A fine line or ridge may be traced just below the junction of the leaf with the stem. This dark line is in reality a thin transverse layer of cork, which, when the leaves have done their work during the year, taking in stores of nourishment for the benefit of the tree, grows and so detaches the leaf from the stem. It is interesting to note also that the starch which the leaves have been making during their life-period, is not lost with them, but is transferred to the stem previous to their fall, and chiefly stored up just below the base of the leaf-stalk, so as to afford nourishment to the bud which is found in the axil of every leaf.

When they fall beneath the tree, they become leaf-mould, which, in its turn, when fully decayed, restores to the soil a large proportion of the minerals taken from it by the roots of the tree. Note also when the leaves fall and decay, how the soft part between the veins rots first, leaving a beautiful skeleton of the leaf. This can be best obtained by keeping the leaves in water for a month or two.

3. The **Flowers** are small, but clustered in large, white panicles overtopping the green foliage, and thus make the tree conspicuous at the time of flowering (compare Mango, page 22). They are white and starlike, the petal having 5 or 6 equal lobes. The number of the stamens is the same as that of the petal-lobes. The style is single and has a two-cleft stigma.

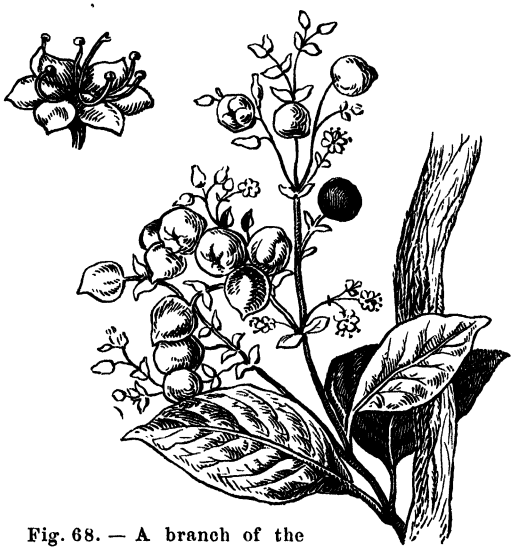


Fig. 68. — A branch of the Teak Tree *(Tectona grandis)*. Much reduced.

4. The **Ovary** is 4-celled and grows under the protection of the inflated calyx into a very hard, bony nut covered with a fur-like coat.

Other Verbenas.

One of the commonest Verbenas is the **Lantana** (*Lantana aculeata*—*Can.* Nātagiḍa; *Mal.* Arippu), a straggling shrub with square, prickly stems and pretty orange or pink flowers arranged in small heads. It is a native of America, but has run wild nearly everywhere in India and is a perfect curse to planters by the way in which it spreads in all directions destroying the other growth. It is often used as a hedge plant, and this should be absolutely forbidden.

The **Chaste Tree** (*Vitex negundo* — *Can.* Lakki; *Mal.* Indrāṇi; *San.* Nirguṇḍi) is a tall shrub with gray foliage, covered with silvery down all over, and bearing small, lilac flowers in panicles. The aroma noticed in the leaves of the Labiatæ (page 78) is found also in this plant.

Another very common genus of this order is the **Clerodendron** of which some species have a remarkable contrivance to exclude self-pollination.

To study this we may examine either *Clerodendron volubile*, a common garden-creeper with a white, inflated calyx and a crimson corolla, or *Clerodendron infortunatum* (*Can.* Ittêvu; *Mal.* Peragu).

The latter is a handsome undershrub with decussate, large and cordate leaves. The erect panicles of its white **Flowers attract night-moths** not only by their pale colour, but also by their sweet smell which is specially strong by night. If various flowers are compared, it will be seen that some have their four stamens straight and the style bent down, whereas others have the style straight, but the stamens curled. The stamens are straight in flowers that have recently opened (fig. 69, 1), and curled in such as have already been open for one or two days (fig. 69, 2). Now, a moth that comes for nectar to a newly opened flower cannot but touch the anthers hanging on the long, horizontal stamens, with the lower side of its wings while it soars in front of the flower thrusting its long tongue into the floral tube. Afterwards, when it goes to a flower which opened the previous night, it must touch the style of it and thus bring the pollen of the first flower to the style of the second. There is absolutely no possibility of self-pollination.



Fig. 69.—Flower of *Clerodendron infortunatum*. 1. Position on 1st evening: Stamens straight, style bent back. 2. Position on 2nd evening: Style straight and stamens curled.

As the flower of this plant attracts night-moths to avail itself of their services, so does the **Fruit attract birds** by the black colour of its 4 drupes and the red colour of the calyx which enlarges and reddens as the fruit ripens. The birds eat the fleshy fruit and disperse the seed.

SUB-CLASS 3.—MONOCHLAMYDEÆ.

Plants with a single or no floral envelope (double in some Euphorbiaceæ). Flowers frequently unisexual.

23. Order: The Nettle and Fig Family.

(Urticaceæ.)

Leaves generally rough, flowers minute, monœcious or diœcious, often crowded on a fleshy body, called involucre.

The Banyan Tree (*Ficus bengalensis*).

(Plate No. 638.)

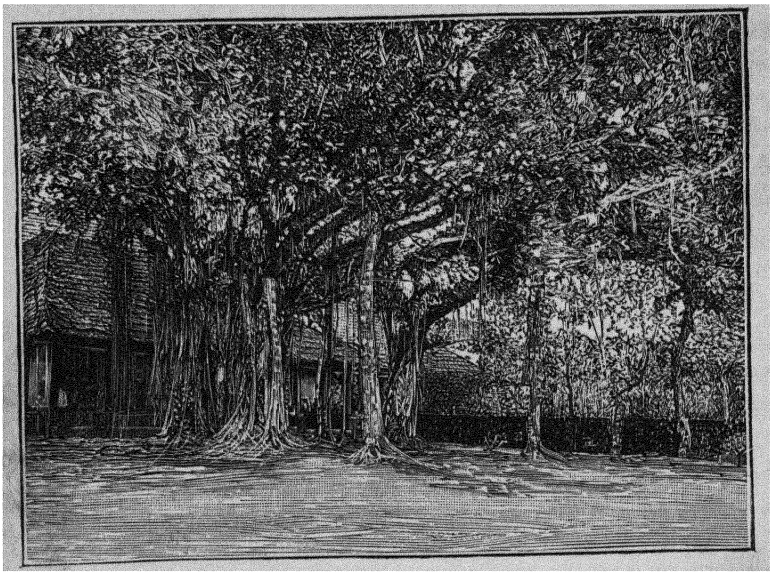
(*Can.* Āla. *Mal.* Pĕrāl. *Tam.* Āla. *Tel.* Maričeṭṭu. *San.* Vaṭah.)

Two peculiarities distinguish the Banyan tree: it has (*a*) very strange roots, given off by the branches and hanging down in the air, and (*b*) flowers that are hidden in globular receptacles, generally called figs.

1. There is hardly any other tree which spreads its **Roots** so wide as the Banyan tree. We have seen that the Mango tree extends its roots in the ground about as far away from the trunk as the branches in the air go. The Banyan tree is not content with so much, it seeks its nourishment in an area which far exceeds the space covered by its crown.

The latter, too, is exceptionally large, as the branches spread horizontally to a great extent. The trunk could, however, not bear this load, if the long branches had no supports. It, therefore, sends down *aërial roots* here and there which enter the ground as soon as they reach it and may become as large as, and similar to, the parent trunk. The branching crown becomes enormously expanded, and there is formed a large hall of columns, in the shade of which there is sufficient space for a village. This power of forming roots in the air also explains a strange thing, *viz.*, Banyan trees growing on other trees and strangling them. They are not parasitic like the Loranthus on

Mango trees, for they do not strike their roots into the tissue of the tree to prey on its juice. What happens is this:—Birds may drop a seed of the Banyan tree on another tree, where it begins to grow and forms root after root. These descend the stem of the tree to the ground, become stronger and stronger, and finally hug it to death.



2. The large, ovate **Leaves** of the Banyan tree are downy beneath, shining above, and covered with a very thick epidermis. They are full of a resinous, milky juice, as are also all the other parts of the plant. All these things work together to make the tree very *hardy* (see Mango tree, page 20).

The *leaf buds* are protected under a sheathing scale, composed of the stipules of the last leaf developed. When the leaves in the bud expand, the stipules drop to the ground, because the plant has no further use for them, and leave an annular scar on the branchlets. In cold countries buds are always shut up in a case of such scales, generally glued together by a sticky substance to shelter them from the weather, especially the low temperature.

Although buds sometimes have no such coverings in warm countries, we see them in this plant. They are very useful also for the Banyan tree, for they shelter the buds from withering and drying up during the dry season.

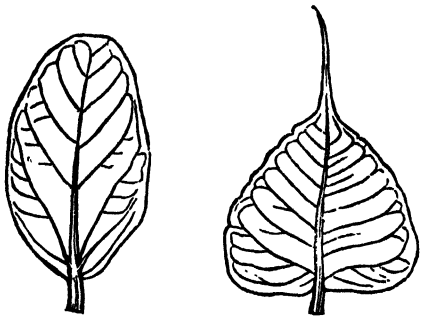
We frequently notice a *red hue on the young leaves,* especially on those which grow in the hot season. There is a red substance inserted in the cells of the leaves, absorbing the strong light which would otherwise destroy the chlorophyll in them. As the leaves grow stronger, this colouring matter gradually disappears (compare Cinnamon tree!).

The Banyan tree is very hardy and affords admirable shade. It is, therefore, often planted along road-sides. When the leaves have done their work, they fall beneath the tree. At the spot where they are joined to the stems, a fine line can be seen. This is a transverse layer of cells which become corky after the leaf has performed its functions, and cut the leaf off from the plant by intercepting the flow of food and water. The leaves then change their colour from green to yellow and dry up. And as they have now lost their hold of the twig, the wind or a cold night will suffice to bring them down to the ground in showers. The cork layer which grew between the stem and the leaf now affords a protecting covering for the bare place on the stem that is left when the leaf falls off. This bare place is called the leaf scar (compare Teak tree, page 80).

3. It is often remarked by some people that the Banyan trees have no **Flowers.** This mistake arises from the latter being concealed within the fleshy receptacle, which is popularly known from the beginning as the fruit. They sit in pairs at the base of the leaf stalk (fig. 71). If we cut through such a fig, as these fruits are called, we shall see that there are numerous minute flowers inside (fig. 71, 2). The round fig, then, is not the fruit of one single flower, like the guava or the pomegranate, but is composed of a receptacle, like that of the Sunflower, with numerous flowers or fruits resting on it. The receptacle, however, is not flat, but forms a hollow ball, leaving a small opening at the top. The little flowers within the fig contain either 1 stamen or 1 pistil, each surrounded by a minute floral envelope, called

perianth, with 3 to 5 segments (fig. 71, 3-6). Hence the plant is grouped under the monochlamydeous plants. The staminate flowers are generally placed at the top of the fig, and the pistillate ones at the bottom. The inconspicuousness of the flowers would point at pollination by the agency of the wind (see II. Part, Pollination). But the fig is *pollinated by insects.* And this is done in the following way.

When we cut figs of the Banyan tree open, we very often find numerous grubs in them and sometimes also little wasps. The latter must have entered through the hole at the top of the fig. They lay their eggs in the ovules of pistillate flowers. In a short time grubs grow from these eggs and eventually become wasps again, and when they leave the fig, they cover themselves with the pollen-dust of staminate flowers near the hole, and thus, when visiting another fig, fertilize the pistillate flowers of the latter. The same happens in the fig of the Cultivated Fig tree (see fig. 74).



1. 2.

Fig. 72. — Leaves of 1. Banyan and 2. Peepul.

4. The **Figs** become scarlet and ripen in the cold weather. They are a welcome food for many birds, bats and other animals, which, in their turn, disperse the seeds over a wide area.

Other Fig Trees and Nettles.

The **Sacred Peepul** (*Ficus religiosa* — *Can.* Araḷimara; *Mal.* Arayāl; *Tam.* Araçamaram; *Tel.* Rāvičeṭṭu; *San.* Pippala, Açvattha) is one of the sacred trees of the Hindus. The sacred "Bo tree" of Buddha was a Peepul. Its leaves are not roundish, like those of the Banyan tree, but have long, narrow points (fig. 72). Their petioles being very long the leaves are shaken by the gentlest breeze and cause a rustling noise which has given rise to many superstitious beliefs. The tree attains a very great

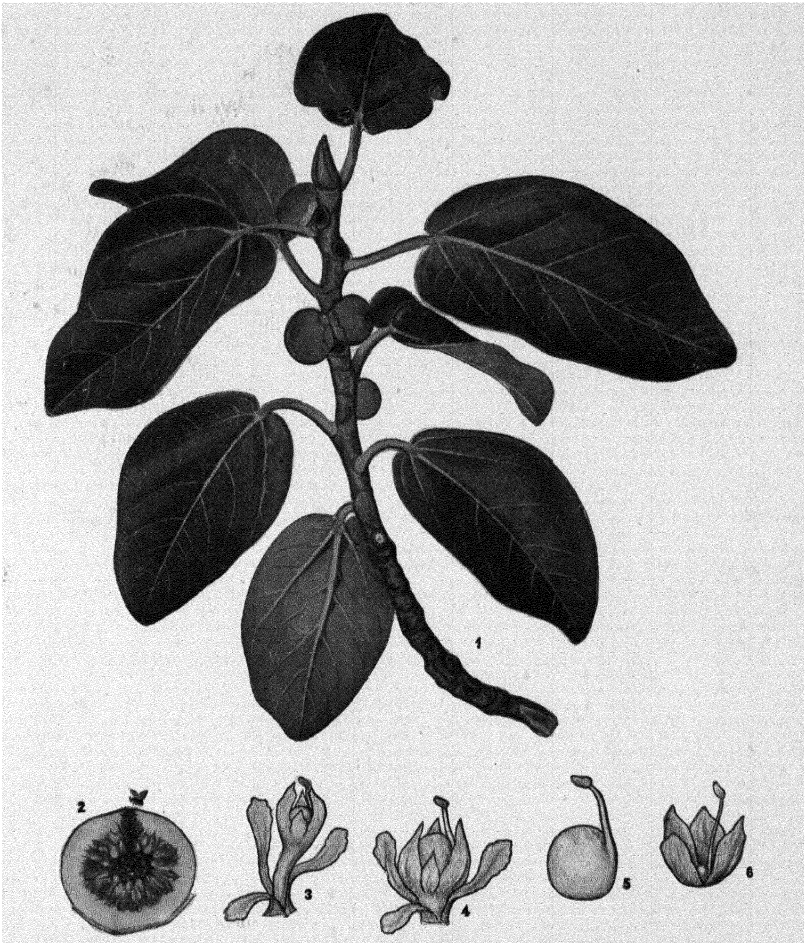


Fig. 71. — BANYAN TREE *(Ficus bengalensis).*

1. Flowering branch. 2. Longitudinal section of fig. 3. 4. 5. 6. Single pistillate flowers from within the fig.

age. The age of a famous Peepul tree at Anurādhapura, in

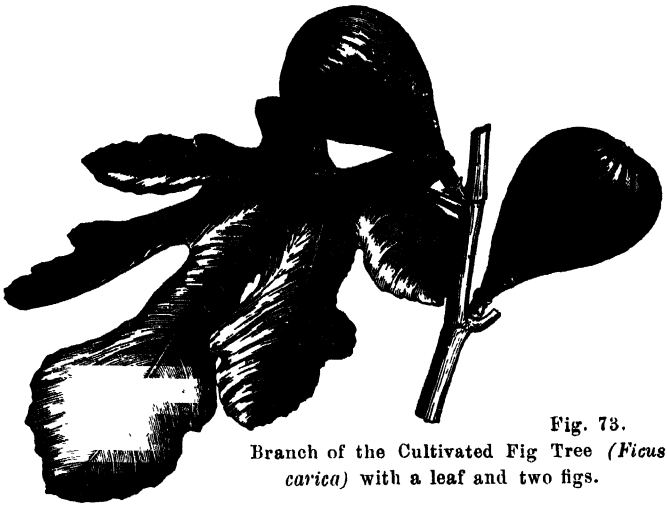


Fig. 73.
Branch of the Cultivated Fig Tree *(Ficus carica)* with a leaf and two figs.

Ceylon, was said to have been 2147 years in 1852, and must be over 2200 years now. — The fruit of the **Country Fig tree** (*Ficus glomerata* — *Can.* Attimara) is eatable. It grows in dense clusters on the trunk or branches. Its leaves are often covered with galls.

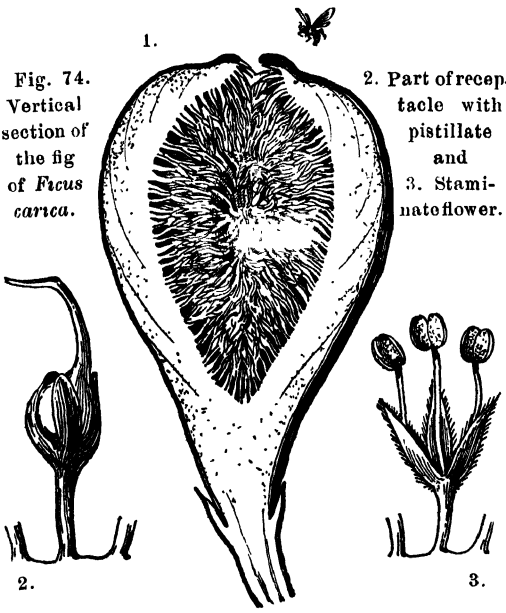


Fig. 74. Vertical section of the fig of *Ficus carica*. 2. Part of receptacle with pistillate and 3. Staminate flower.

There are many other species of Ficus belonging to India. The most important of the rest is the **Cultivated Fig** (*Ficus carica* — *Can.* Aṅjūra), whose fruit forms an important part of the food of man and beast in the countries round the Mediterranean Sea where the tree is grown abundantly and produces a superior kind of fruit.

A very important representative of this order is the **Jack Tree** (*Artocarpus integrifolia* — *Can.* Halasu; *Mal.* Pilāvu̱; *Tam.* Palāčču; *Tel.* Panasa; *San.* Skandaphala). The male catkins, not much larger than a man's thumb, fall off after flowering, the female ones closely packed on the outside of a long receptacle, grow to be a huge fruit, to bear which the twigs of the tree would not be strong enough; they grow, therefore, on the trunks and main branches (fig. 75). The immense fruit, the largest eatable fruit in the world, sometimes attains a weight of 60 lbs. The yellow wood, which darkens after being cut, is used for making ornamental furniture, and the tenacious, white juice of it makes the best birdlime.

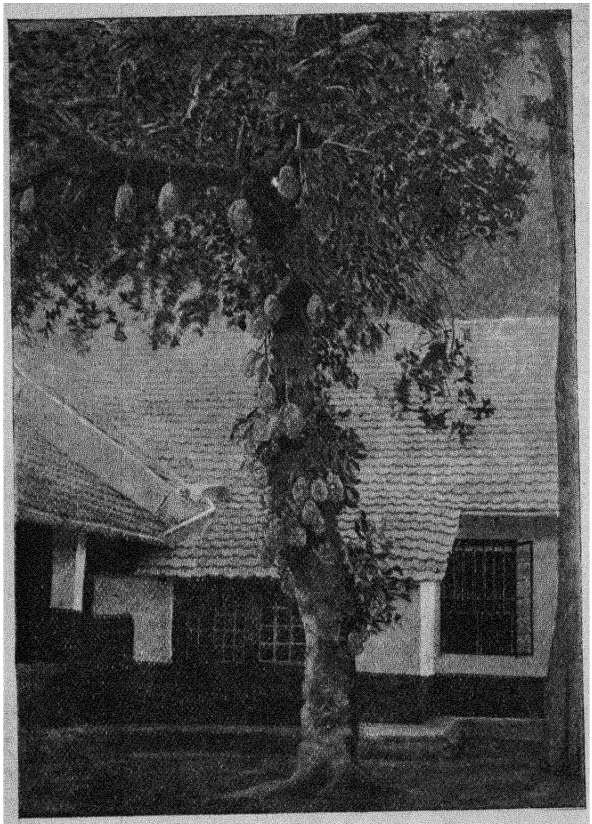


Fig. 75.—A Jack Tree (*Artocarpus integrifolia*).

An ally of the Fig tree is the **Mulberry** (*Morus indica*— *Can.* Reshmikambaḷi-giḍa). The fruit of this is, like the fig, a collective fruit, with this difference, that in the Mulberry, as in the Jack fruit, the individual flowers are arranged at the outside

of a common receptacle, whereas the flowers of a fig are inside the receptacle. The leaves of the tree are the food of the silk-worm. It is largely grown both in Asia and in Southern Europe for its leaves and edible fruit.

Another representative of the Nettle family is the **Hemp Plant** (*Cannabis sativa—Can.* Baṅgi; *Mal.* Kaṅčāvu; *Tam.* Paṅgi; *Tel.* Gaṅjāyi; *Hin.* Gāṅjā). The fibre of the stem of Hemp has been used for ages in the manufacture of ropes and cordage, canvas and sack-cloth. The plant is a native of Central Asia and has digitate leaves and dicœcious flowers, the staminate flowers being on one plant and the pistillate on another. From the green parts of the plant a disagreeable smell proceeds, which can benumb a man. On this depends also the use of the bhaṅgi and gāṅjā, a narcotic resin obtained from the Hemp plant. This is either smoked in pipes, like tobacco, or made into a confection and eaten. Preparations of Hemp in use amongst the Mussulmans are called *hashish*. This intoxicant renders men excitable and quarrelsome and disposed to acts of violence. It is from this latter temperament that the use and meaning of our word assassin (*Arab.* haschāschīn = hashish-eaters) have most probably arisen.

24. Order: The Spurge Family.

(Euphorbiaceæ.)

Flowers, as a rule, inconspicuous, unisexual (monœcious or dicœcious), often surrounded by bracts. Floral envelope often wanting, sometimes double. Ovary free, usually 3-celled; fruit capsular and drupaceous; the 3 carpels separate elastically from a central column.

The Castor Oil Plant (*Ricinus communis*).

(*Can.* Auḍla, Haralu. *Mal.* Čiṭṭāmaṇakku. *Tam.* Āmaṇakku. *Tel.* Āmudāla. *Hin.* Eraṇḍikējhāḍ.)

The large and glossy leaves of this annual herb are very handsome. They are peltate, which means their blade is fixed to the stalk by a point within the margin. They are also

divided into hand-like lobes and have serrate edges. The flowers are arranged in terminal panicles. They are monœcious, *i. e.*, one flower contains either stamens or pistils alone, and both

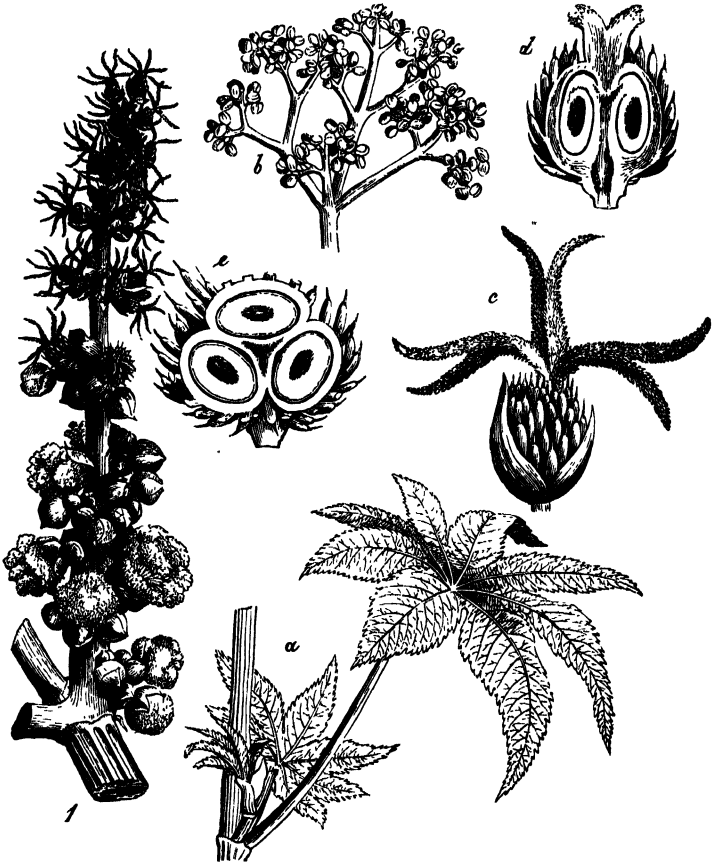


Fig. 76.— The Castor Oil Plant *(Ricinus communis)*. Branch with male and female flowers. *a*. Leaves. *b*. Stamen. *c*. Female flower. *d*. Longitudinal and *e*. transverse section of fruit.

occur on the same plant. The staminate flowers are below, the pistillate above. The flowers have one envelope, consisting of 3 to 5 sepals which protect the inner organs when in bud. The structure of the stamens is quite out of the common. They are branched so that a single stamen looks like a bunch (fig. 76, *b*).

The female flowers have 3 styles, each deeply split into 2 segments. The fruit is a spinous capsule with 3 divisions containing one oily seed each. A valuable drug, the Castor oil, is obtained from the seeds. The capsule opens spontaneously when ripe in the way which is characteristic of the order: The 3 carpels, constituting the capsule (fig. 76, *e*), separate elastically from a central column and split almost to the base.

The oil extracted from castor-seed is also highly valued for lubricating machinery, for dressing tanned hides and skins, for lighting, for soap and candle-making and other arts. Castor-cake is the best vegetable manure in use. It is largely grown in some parts of India.

Other Spurges.

Many Spurges (*Euphorbiaceæ*) have an acrid juice in their stems and leaves. If a wound is caused, this juice flows out freely. It is often white like milk, but poisonous. Cattle, therefore, do not touch these plants. The juice contains a kind of resin which is sticky and curdles soon and consequently closes a wound instantly, thus preventing bacteria and spores of fungi entering the plant and causing disease or death. It is also a means by which the evaporation of the sap in the plant is slackened.

Some Spurges are exceptionally well adapted for life in the driest and poorest soil.

The **Milk Hedge** (*Euphorbia tirucalli*—*Can.* Kaḷḷi; *Mal.* Tirukaḷḷi; *Tam.* Kaḷḷi; *San.* Trikaṇṭaka), for instance, has no leaves during the greater part of the year, but cactus-like, succulent stems with prickles in which moisture is stored up (see Cacteæ, page 42).

The following are common types of plants belonging to this order:—

The **Awla Tree** (*Phyllanthus emblica—Can., Mal., Tam., Tel.* Nelli; *Hind.* Aunlā), a tree with linear leaves arranged in two rows, and small, axillary flowers. The succulent fruits are eaten or made into preserves, and, if dried when unripe, are used for

tanning. The wood is hard and durable, particularly under water, but never grows to a large size. The bark is strongly astringent and can be employed to tan leather.

The **Purging Nut** (*Jatropha curcas* — *Can.* Aḍaluharaḷu; *Mal.* Kāṭāmaṇakkụ; *Tam.* Ādaḷai; *Tel.* Ādavi-āmudamu), a large, unornamental shrub, much used for hedges. The seeds, taken internally, act with great violence as an emetic and a laxative.

The **Crotons,** mostly originated from *Codiæum variegatum,* also belong to the Spurges. They are to be seen everywhere in gardens, where they are kept for their variegated leaves.

Among the many other species of this large family we must still mention some which have become highly useful. These are the **India Rubber Trees** *Hevea brasiliensis* and *Manihot Glaziovii.* The former yields what is known as Para rubber and the latter Ceára rubber. The rubber is obtained from the milky juice of these trees. One of the ways by which rubber is made is the following: A number of slanting incisions are made in the bark. Little tin cups are then fixed below the incisions, from which the sap flows into the vessels. The sap remains liquid in the vessels. In order to dry it, clay moulds or planks are dipped into the liquid and then exposed to the sun, or kept in the smoke of wood fires. The thin layers of the liquid, which sticks to the moulds, now dry quickly; and by repeating the same process over and over again, more and more layers are formed until a large mass is obtained. The valueless moulds are broken or the rubber cut off the planks. — This substance, rubber, owes its usefulness to its elastic and waterproof properties. By mixing the raw material with a little sulphur it becomes "vulcanised", retaining now some of its elasticity at a high or a low temperature. It is used for manufacturing tubes, waterproof coats, shoes, balls, toys, and many other things. If, however, equal parts of rubber and sulphur are mixed, a hard, horny substance, called vulcanite, is produced, which is made into combs, buttons and a hundred other things. Rubber is a bad conductor of electricity and is, therefore, much used in making electrical apparatus, for instance, for wrapping round wires of the cables which are laid from continent to continent under the ocean.

25. Order: The Laurel Family.

(Lauraceæ.)

Aromatic trees and shrubs. Leaves gland-dotted. Perianth tubular. Stamens in 2 or more rows, filaments flattened, anthers opening by valves.

The Cinnamon Tree (*Cinnamomum zeylanicum*).

(Plate No. 632.)

(*Can.* Dālčini. *Mal.* Karuva. *Tam.* Lavaṅgapaṭṭai. *Tel.* Lavaṅgapaṭṭa. *Hind.* Dālčīn.)

The Cinnamon tree grows wild in the Malay peninsula and is cultivated in Ceylon for its bark which is a very valuable spice. A variety of it, *Cinnamon iners,* is very common on the Ghauts and on the Malabar Coast.

1. When we rub its **Leaves,** a fine aroma is produced, caused by a volatile oil contained in them. The same oil occurs also in other parts of the tree and chiefly in the inner part of its bark.

The *young shoots* of the tree are often of a *dark crimson* (Plate No. 632, 2). Many other plants, as the Rose, the Mango tree or the Banyan tree, have the same peculiarity, but none of them to such a degree as the Cinnamon tree. We naturally ask what benefit these plants derive from this red tint for their young shoots. The green colour of plants is due to a green substance, called chlorophyll, in their cells which is seen through the thin, transparent epidermis. This chlorophyll is of vital importance to every plant; without it it could not live. For it is the chlorophyll that prepares the substances of which it builds up its body from the raw materials obtained from the soil and from the air, (see Part II: Assimilation of food by the leaves). We can now see the great importance of chlorophyll to the plant. Excessive light will destroy chlorophyll, and it is to reduce the action of light that the red colour is produced. Young leaves, like the tender shoots of the Cinnamon tree, require special protection. This is afforded by the red dyes which are deposited in front of the chlorophyll granules so that these absorb the solar rays before they can reach the chlorophyll. When the leaves are

mature, the red pigment disappears; for then the leaves having more vigour are in a position to renew the chlorophyll granules that are used up in their work. The leathery epidermis of the older leaves likewise tends to protect them at that stage.

Another characteristic of the Cinnamon leaves are the three conspicuous parallel ribs running from the base to the tip (fig. 77).



Fig. 77.— Flowering branch of the Cinnamon tree *(Cinnamomum zeylanicum)*.

2. The **Flowers** of this tree are incomplete in so far as there are no petals. There is only a cup-shaped greenish calyx, called perianth, with 6 segments, enclosing the reproductive organs, and later the berry. At the base of each of the 6 segments of the perianth a stamen is inserted whose anther opens by valves. Within these 6 stamens there is another series of 3 sterile stamens, and alternately with these we see 3 short, arrow-shaped bodies which secrete honey.

3. The **Bark** of the tree is aromatic and has become a very important and valuable article of commerce. The bark of branches, two or three years old, is the best. They are then of the size of an ordinary cane. The branches are cut, stripped of their leaves, after which the bark is peeled off with a knife. After removing the outer part of the bark which has a very bitter taste, the inner part of it is carefully dried, when it turns brown and curls up into little rolls.

Why is the whole branch cut when only the bark is wanted? Would it not be more economical to take away the bark and allow the branch to grow and add new bark for another time? As we know from our lesson on the Teak tree, the sap of the tree circulates in the inner layer of the bark and in the outer

layer of the wood. If these are destroyed, the circulation from the root to the branches is stopped, and the branch must die. We could, therefore, impossibly expect the branch to grow after taking away its bark.

Allied Plants and Orders.

To this family belongs also *Cassytha filiformis* (*Can.* Bēḷubaḷḷi; *Mal.* Ākāçavaḷḷi; *Tam.* Kottān; *Tel.* Pāčitīge). This is a leafless, yellowish-green twiner that runs over hedges in a tangled mass. If we examine it, we find that it has no roots in the ground (hence the vernacular names!), but that there are swellings in the thread-like stem wherever it comes in contact with the plant on which it is climbing. From these swollen parts roots come out which break through the bark of the host, from which the guest sucks up its nourishment. Such plants are called parasites.

Other well-known parasites belong to the **Mistletoe Family** (*Loranthaceæ*), which is an allied order. Of these the commonest is *Loranthus longiflorus* which lives on many of our garden-trees. We may ask, how this strange plant could find such a lofty place. This is done by the agency of birds which are fond of its juicy berries. As the pulp of the berries is very gummy, the seeds contained in them stick to the beaks of the birds. These carry them about until they happen to rub their beaks on a branch to which the seed then sticks. The seed will soon germinate and drive its root through the bark of the tree into its cambium. As it grows, it fuses with the tissues, and derives all its nourishment from the substances in the branch. Of course, the tree is weakened by this parasite, the sucking roots of which disturb the flow of the sap, and not unfrequently the branch is killed by the intruder.

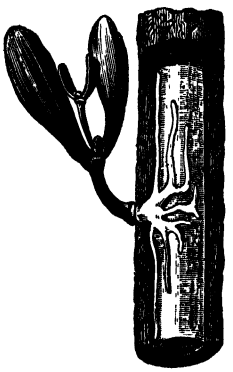


Fig. 78.—A young Mistletoe (*Viscum album*), the roots being laid bare.

Parasitic plants insert their roots into the stems and roots of other plants and grow at their expense instead of drawing

the nourishment from the ground. A careful distinction must, however, be drawn between such plants as the Pepper Vine, the Orchids, Ferns and Mosses on the one hand, and Loranthus and Cassytha on the other. The former are called epiphytes; they grow and only climb on the bark of trees, whereas parasites are actually nourished by the juice of the trees into which their roots penetrate.

26. Order: The Pepper Family.

(Piperaceæ.)

The Pepper Vine (*Piper nigrum*).

(*Can.* Oḷḷē meṇasina balli. *Mal.* Kuru-mulagu. *Tam.* Miḷagu. *Tel.* Kavyamu. *Hind.* Kālā-miriči.)

1. This is a large **Climber** requiring the support of other trees. It climbs, however, not like the Bean by winding round its supporter, or like the Cucumber by using tendrils for this purpose, but with the help of small roots which grow from the swollen nodes of the slender zigzag stems. These roots press close to the trees, so that the climber is fastened to its supporter, as with a thousand little fingers. They do not penetrate into the tree, and hence the Pepper vine is not a parasite. Besides these adventitious roots, the Pepper vines have, like ordinary plants, proper roots in the ground. If these are cut, the plant withers, unless, on its way up the tree towards the light, the plant has found nourishing earth in the crevices and holes of the tree.

2. The **Leaves** are ovate, entire, dark green on the upper side and lighter on the lower one. Five or seven ribs along the leaf stand out very prominently at the lower surface. The leaves are placed alternately and grow from the nodes of the stem (fig. 79).

3. **Flower and Fruit.**—When the plant has ascended the tree and so reached a point where it gets more light, its stem leaves the trunk of the tree and produces no more adventitious roots, but forms flower-buds opposite the leaves. The flowers are arranged on densely clustered, hanging spikes, and are very small.

without any regular calyx or corolla. They are unisexual, *i. e.*, bear either stamens or pistils, but not both together. Besides, one plant has only staminate and another only pistillate flowers. Such plants are called diœcious. The staminate flowers have two stamens, the pistillate flowers one ovule which grows into a berry and becomes red when ripe, containing one seed in a hard shell embedded in its pulp.

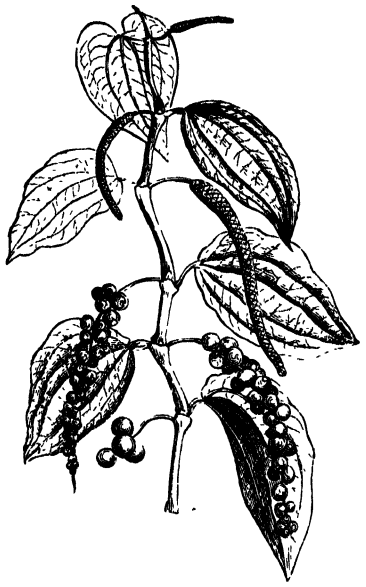


Fig. 79. — The Pepper Vine (*Piper nigrum*).

4. **Use.**—The plant is grown for the fruit which is used as a condiment. Black pepper is the unripe, dried berries; white pepper, the same allowed to ripen, with the pulpy coat removed. The pungent taste and smell of the pepper corn is due to an aromatic oil. The same substance is also noticeable in its leaves, but to a lesser degree.

The propagation of the Pepper Vine is effected by means of mature branches. These are layered, *i.e.*, bent down into the ground, and when they take root, they are severed from the parent vine, planted out in shade, and trailed on to trees.

5. A near ally of the Pepper Vine is the **Betel Leaf Pepper** (*Piper betle*—*Can.* Vīḷyada-baḷḷi; *Mal* Tāmbūlam; *Tam.* Vettilaikkoḍi; *Tel.* Tamalapāku; *Hin.* Pān). Its leaves are chewed with lime and the nut of the Areca Palm.

CLASS 2.—MONOCOTYLEDONS.

Plants with one seed-leaf. Leaves usually parallel-veined. Floral parts generally in sets of 3. Stems not separable into pith, wood and bark, but consisting of fibre, irregularly imbedded in cellular tissue with a firmly adherent rind outside.

27. Order: The Palm Family.

(Palmaceæ.)

Stem woody, unbranched. Leaves pinnately or palmately divided. Perianth six-leaved.

The Cocoanut Palm (*Cocos nucifera*).

(Plate No. 637.)

(*Can.* Teṅgina mara. *Mal.* Tēṅa. *Tam.* Teṅgu. *Tel.* Teṅkāyiceṭṭu. *Hin.* Nāralkejhāḍ. *San.* Tr̥iṇarāja.)

The Cocoanut Palm is a tree found only in tropical countries, and there grows best near the seacoast.

1. Its slender, cylindrical **Stem** and the tuft of leaves with which it is crowned, is so different from the appearance of other trees that every child at once understands that the Cocoanut Palm belongs to a class of plants quite different from that which most other trees belong to.

2. **Monocotyledons and Dicotyledons compared.**—A general comparison of the Cocoanut tree with, for instance, a Mango tree will make the characteristic features of the new class, called Monocotyledons, clear and impressive. Beginning with the *root*, we find that the Mango tree has thick and stem-like roots with numerous ramifications, whereas the root of the Cocoanut Palm consists of numerous, similar, thread-like or fibrous roots.

The *trunk* of the Mango tree is stout, grows thicker and thicker as it grows older, and is at a certain height divided into many branches. The stem of the Palm tree is slender, does not increase in girth as it grows older, and never branches. The

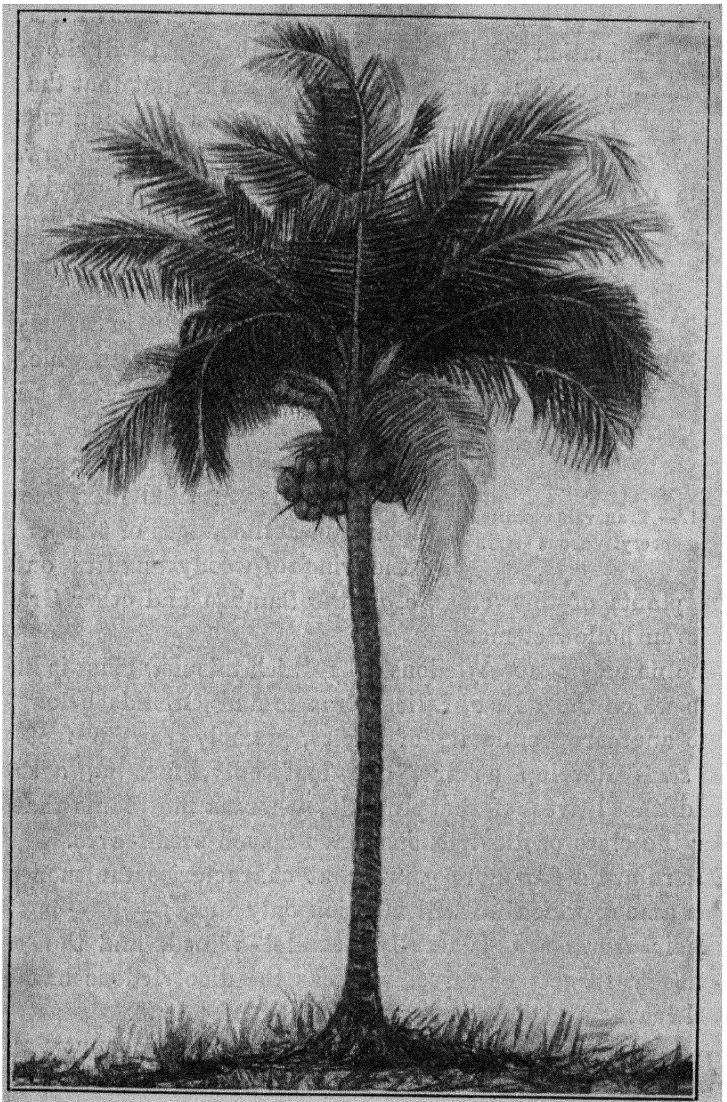


Fig. 80.— The Cocoanut Palm *(Cocos nucifera).*

latter fact explains why the stem need not grow in girth: for it has not to bear such a great load as the Mango tree. A closer examination of the structure of the stem will show that there are no annual rings in the wood-tissue, but that the substance of the stem is like a bundle of sticks closely bound together (fig. 81). The outside of the trunk is not covered with *bark*, but consists only of the very hard outer layer of the wood itself.

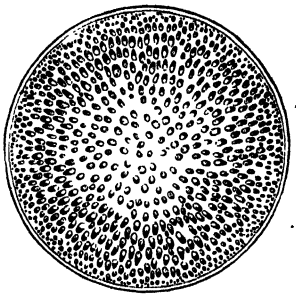


Fig. 81. — Transverse section of a monocotyledonous stem.

The absence of the bark proper suggests that there is not such a thing as the cambium ring in the stem of the Palm tree. The sap circulates in vessels distributed throughout the stem which can be plainly seen for on the cross section of a Cane. The soft part inside forms a passage through which water ascends the stem, and is protected from damage, evaporation and changes of temperature by the ring of woody bundles outside. Many plants of this class, *e.g.*, the Bamboo and other Grasses, have even hollow stems.

The name "monocotyledons", by which this new class is known and to which the Palms, Lilies, Grasses and Orchids belong, refers to another peculiarity of theirs, namely to the fact that their *seeds* develop at first one leaf only, forming a sheath around the leaves of the plumule, whereas the plants that fall under the class of dicotyledons, have 2 such seed-leaves.

There are a few more points that characterise the monocotyledons among which we will mention only these:—

Their *leaves* are generally parallel-veined, and the *petals* are mostly in sets of three, whereas the dicotyledons have net-veined leaves and the floral parts in sets of 4 or 5.

3. **Leaves.** — We have seen that in the Cocoanut Palm a crown of mighty, feathery leaves waves on a slender stem, which can reach a very considerable height. The wind is, therefore, able to exercise its full force on the leaves. These are exceptionally large, sometimes 16 feet long, and if their blades were entire, as they are, indeed, in their undeveloped, folded bud-state,

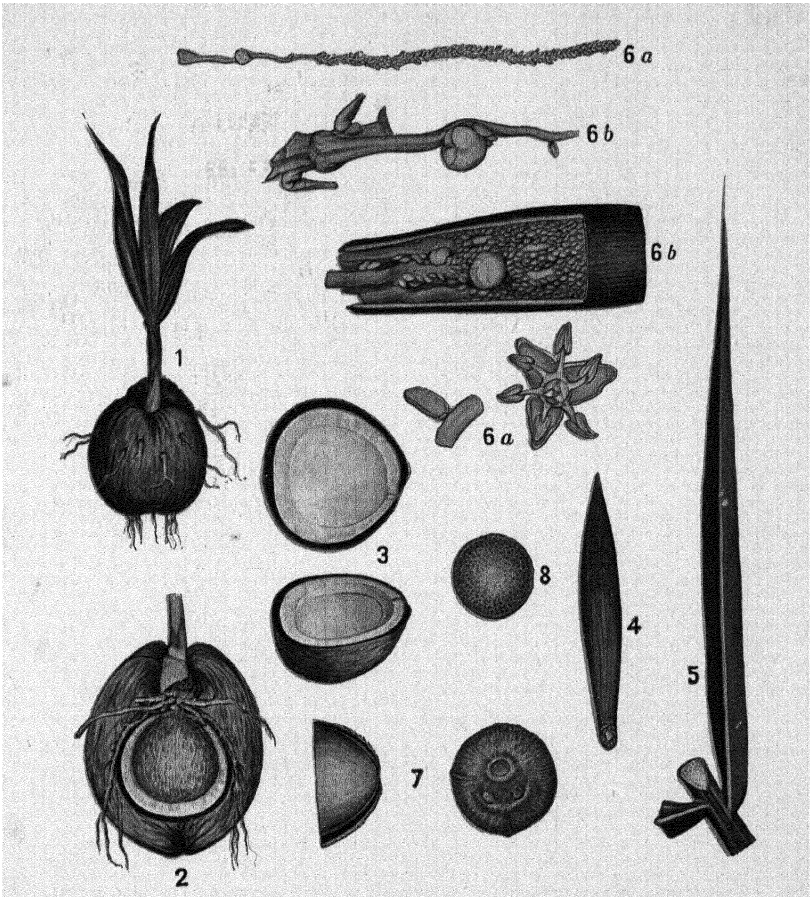


Fig. 82. — Cocoanut *(Cocos nucifera)*.

1. Young plant. 2. Vertical section of germinating nut. 3. Ripe cocoanut cut open. 4. Spathe. 5. Pinnule. 6. Flowers, *a*. male, *b*. female. 7. Upper part of nut-shell. 8. Cross-section of stem.

the wind would certainly tear them into pieces or uproot the whole tree. To prevent this and to enable them to withstand the strongest storm, they become slit into segments by the rupture of the tissue at the edges of the folds, forming *pinnate, i. e.*, feathery leaves, which let the wind pass between the pinnules and so lessen its pressure. Besides, the leaves are covered with such a *strong and hard epidermis* that no vehemence of the lashing tropical rains can do them any harm.

The tuft at the end of the stem contains 12 to 24 leaves. As generally *every month one leaf is produced and one is dropped,* the number of them does not increase. The fallen leaves leave a scar on the stem, by counting which the age of the tree may be estimated.

4. **Flowers.**—Out of the axils of the leaves spring the much-branched inflorescences which are at first protected by a huge spathe (fig. 82, 4). The flowers are unisexual, and both sexes grow on the same plant. They are placed on the branches of the panicle in such a way that the *male flowers greatly outnumber the female ones,* and also so that the female flowers are always near the base of the panicle and the male ones at the end. Both kinds are inconspicuous; for they need not attract any insects to carry the pollen from the stamens to the pistils. It is the wind which does this work here, and to allow for the wastage of pollen there is such an abundance of staminate flowers. The reason why the *female flowers are situated at the lower end of the panicles* is not difficult to understand; for if the heavy nuts were suspended by a long stalk, they could easily be detached by the wind.—The staminate flowers, which can be picked up in large numbers at the foot of every fruit-bearing Cocoanut tree as they drop after flowering, consist of 3 smaller and 3 greater horny, straw-coloured petals and 6 stamens. The pistillate flowers are much larger than the staminate ones. They consist of 6 petals and the pistil, but the petals are broad and increase with the growth of the egg-shaped ovary, forming a large, cup-shaped base for the ripe nut.

5. The **Nut** of this tree is wonderfully formed. The *covering* is threefold,—a thin outer skin, a fibrous mass in the middle,

and a shell as hard as stone in the interior. Break the latter and you will get the kernel which is the *seed,* formed like a hollow ball and containing the minute germ in its pulp and a milky substance in its cavity. The *pulp and the milk form the first nourishment of the seedling.*

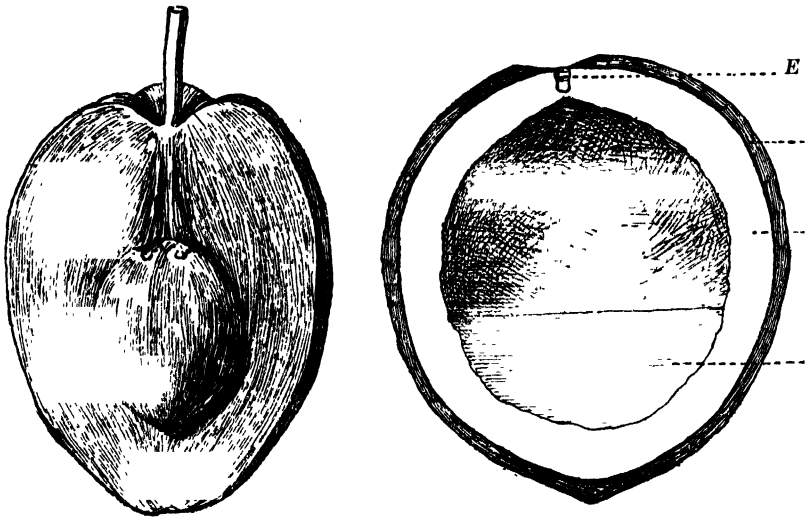


Fig. 83. — The Cocoanut with part of the fibrous covering removed. To the right the shell or endocarp (*S.*) opened, showing the kernel (*K*), the embryo (*E.*) and the milk (*M.*).

But the very tender *seed-bud* is evidently too weak to push itself through the hard shell. Hence that part of the shell which is immediately over the embryo or germ is so thin that it can easily be pierced by the tender sprout. The pistil of the cocoanut is composed of 3 parts (carpels), only one of which develops and forms a germ, and we see the traces of the other two in the two other hard eyes which every cocoanut possesses. Moreover, the germ, and with it these holes in the shell, are always at that end of the nut where it is fastened to the stalk. The fibrous covering is least developed at this spot and can be easily broken through by the seedling.

A *fatty oil contained in the kernel* is the chief food of the

young plant. Mixed with water the oil soon becomes rancid. It is partly to prevent the oil becoming thus spoiled that the nut requires a strong covering. This furnishes, of course, also a very good protection against enemies that are covetous of the sweet fruit, and protects the seed from harm when it falls from the tree to the ground. If the nut falls by chance into the sea, the porous middle part of the covering enables it to float, and the nut can then be carried by the waves and sea-currents to a distant island where it may strike root. In this way the lonely, deserted coral reefs of the South Sea may have come into the possession of this magnificent Palm tree.

6. The Cocoanut Palm is not only one of the most beautiful, but also **one of the most useful trees** that adorn the coasts of tropical countries. The stem is useful for timber; the leaves are used for thatching houses; the soft bud of the young plants furnishes a palatable vegetable; by tapping the stalk of the inflorescence a juice is obtained, from which by fermentation palm-wine (toddy) is made, and which, if unfermented, yields a good sugar when boiled down; the middle part of the covering of the fruit yields a very useful fibre, out of which ropes are made which possess a high power of resistance to the action of water; out of the hard shell they make drinking vessels, spoons, *etc.;* the kernel has a delicious taste and forms part of the daily food of the people; an oil of good quality is obtained from the kernel; the refuse forms a food for cattle; the milk of the fruit is a delicious beverage: there is hardly any part of this tree which is not of some use to man.

7. **Enemies.**—Among the animals which destroy the tree and its fruits may be mentioned the rat, which bites a hole into the nut in order to get at the kernel, and the Goliath beetle (*Oryctes rhinoceros*), which damages the trees by cutting large holes in them through the young leaf-shoots. When the leaves open, signs of the beetle's work are shown.

Other Palms.

The order to which the Cocoanut Palm belongs, the *Palmaceæ*, is essentially a tropical one. The unbranched trunks, marked

with the scars of the leaf-stalks, and their terminal crown of noble, evergreen leaves, are characteristic of the order. · So are the unisexual flowers, thickly arranged in panicles or spikes within a protecting spathe. The perianth is generally 6-divided in 2 series; stamens 3 or 6, ovary free and generally of 3 carpels. Various species of this useful order are commonly known, as they grow everywhere in the tropics.

Perhaps the commonest in Southern India is the **Palmyra Palm** (*Borassus flabelliformis*—*Can.* Tāḷi; *Mal.* Tālam; *Tam.* Panai; *Tel.* Tāṭi; *Hin.* Tāḍ). (Plate in preparation.) This tree chiefly grows on the slopes from the cultivated valleys to the plateaus above, or on sandy plains near the coast.

The leaves are fan-shaped, their petioles serrated and spinous on the edges. The flowers are diœcious. The inflorescence of the male tree consists of several 3-forked spikes, supported by a spathe, each fork being about 1 foot long. The spikes contain hundreds of minute flowers arranged in dense spikelets, each of more than 12 flowers, covered under imbricated scales. The top flower appears from under the scale and falls off after a day, making room for the next lower one. The small flower has 3 whitish petals with brown streaks and 6 yellow stamens. The spike of the female tree is about $1^1/_2$ feet in length, each flower being wrapped up in half a dozen petals and its size being that of a cherry. The full-grown fruit is dark-brown and half the size of a cocoanut, with very tough fibres. There are 3 seeds inside, consisting of a jelly-like, hollow kernel with the germ at the end.

The spikes of both, male and female trees, are cut, and the sap which flows out of the wound is drunk as toddy, or made into jaggery. The toddy intended for jaggery is drawn in lime-coated pots, then boiled, and thus converted into jaggery.

The trunk of the tree is used for rafters. The fruit can be eaten. The leaves are used for many purposes like those of the Cocoanut Palm.

Other Palms are the majestic **Talipot** or **Fan Palm** (*Corypha umbraculifera*), which forms a huge, terminal inflorescence once in its life and dies after the seeds ripen; the **Areca Palm** (*Areca catechu*), the most slender and elegant of Indian palms, "raising



Fig. 84.—An Indian Jungle with various Palm trees.

its graceful stem and feathery crown like an arrow shot down from heaven" (*Hooker*). The nut is eaten with Betel leaves.

From the stem of the **Malabar Sago Palm** (*Caryota urens*) a sago is obtained. This is simply the starch stored up in the soft cells (*parenchyma*) of the stem. It is also a very lofty and noble Palm, the great hanging clusters of flowers and fruits being very noticeable. The leaf-stalk makes a fair fishing rod, the fibre of the spathe a good line. A toddy is also extracted from the inflorescence in the same way as from the Cocoanut and Palmyra.

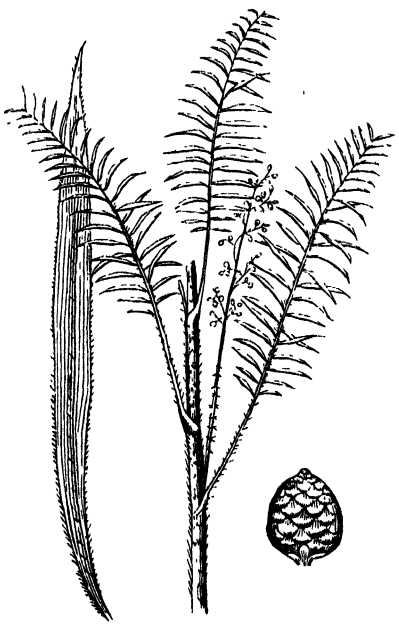


Fig. 85. — The Rattan Cane Palm (*Calamus rotang*).

What the Cocoanut Palm is to India that is the **Date Palm** (*Phœnix dactylifera*) to Arabia. Its fruits that ripen in August, come to us at Christmas time.

The **Wild Date Palm** (*Phœnix sylvestris*) grows in many parts of India. Its leaves are used for mats, and the inflorescence yields a kind of toddy.

Another Palm, fairly common in our jungles, is the **Rattan Cane Palm** (*Calamus rotang*). It is a climber that rises with the help of the prickly appendages of its petioles to the crowns of the highest trees in order to get more light than it could obtain in the thickets of the jungle. The climbing stems attain a length of more than hundred feet. The Cane is split and manufactured into numerous articles of utility. The shining outer coating of the Rattan Cane is a secretion from the plant, and consists mostly of a mineral substance, called silex, which is nearly the same as quartz. By bending the Cane it comes off in little, thin, transparent flakes. It serves to give strength and protection to the stem.

28. Order: The Arum Family.

(Aroideæ.)

Acrid herbs. Leaves net-veined, often variegated. Flowers small, unisexual, arranged on a spadix within a spathe. Perianth usually nil.

The Kesu Plant (*Colocasia antiquorum*).

(*Can.* Kesu. *Mal.* Čĕmpu. *Tam.* Šīmaikiḻaṅgu.)

This plant is an inhabitant of shady and moist places. It is often cultivated for the leaf-stalks and tubers which are eaten as vegetables.

1. The peltate, arrow-head **Leaves** arise not from a stem, but from a truncated tuber, and are, therefore, called radical. They are *large and glabrous* (having no hairs). As they grow during the monsoon and in swampy soils, there is no danger of their being dried up. On the contrary, the high percentage of moisture in the air at that time tends to check the action of transpiration. To supplement this vital process and to assist in its growth the *plant is enabled to let the water pass* out in drops *from a minute pore at the tip of its leaves* to which point free canals, in the substance of the leaves, converge. In this way room is made for new food-substances to be brought up by the roots. These drops can be noticed especially when the temperature is low and the air can, therefore, not hold much water vapour.

When it rains, the leaves do not become wet; the water runs off in silvery drops, as it would from a duck's back. This is due to a *wax-like coat* spread over the surface of the leaves. If the water would wet the leaves, it would hinder the growth of the plant (see Lotus plant, page 2).

Cattle are careful to avoid feeding on them; for though they taste sweet at first, they leave a very acrid and disagreeable taste afterwards, which is due to the presence of certain salts in the leaves and stalks.

2. The **Flowers** are rarely seen in the cultivated kinds of Colocasia. But they can easily be obtained from the wild variety,

as well as from *Caladium*, an allied plant which is grown in gardens for its variegated leaves. In the latter the flower appears with the first leaves soon after the first rains. What is generally called the flower is, however, not a single flower but an inflorescence consisting of a large, hood-like bract, called the *spathe*, and a fleshy spike or *spadix* of numerous small, unisexual flowers, so arranged that those at the bottom of the spike are pistillate and those at the top staminate, intercepted by some abortive pistils in the middle. The staminate flowers consist of a single anther, each opening by minute pores at the top, and the pistillate flowers of a single pistil, all closely packed together on the spadix.

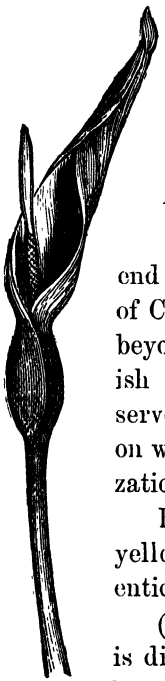


Fig. 86. Spathe and spadix of *Colocasia antiquorum* (⅓ of natural size).

The spadix of Colocasia appears at the end of the rainy season. It differs from that of Caladium in having the spadix prolonged beyond the stamens into an acute, yellowish club which bears no flowers and serves as a means of *attracting insects* on which the plant depends for the fertilization of its ovules (fig. 86. 87).

Besides this appendage and the large, yellow spathe surrounding it, insects are also enticed by

(*a*) a *strong smell* of the spadix which is disagreeable to us, but does not seem to be so to the midges that visit the flowers;

(*b*) the *nectar*, secreted by the stigmas of the pistils, and the *copious pollen* of the stamens, constituting food for them, and

(*c*) the *high temperature* in the globular enlargement of the spathe at its lower part, causing them to seek refuge there.

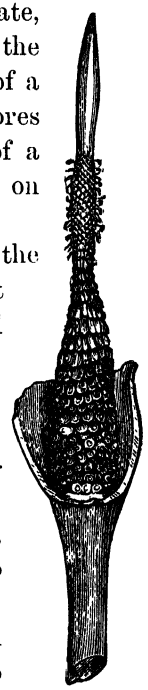


Fig. 87. Spathe removed showing spadix with pistillate and staminate flowers.

3. After flowering the spathe fades and nothing remains of the whole spadix, except the lower part where the pistils ripen into a cluster of **Berries** to be eaten and dispersed by birds.

4. After this the whole plant withers and perishes, excepting the **Tubers,** in which plenty of food is stored up for the next season. When the rains begin again, these plants are among the first to cover the ground with their fresh green.—It is also through these tubers that the plant is propagated. Like the Potato, it throws out long underground shoots, portions of them being filled with starch and swelled up to form fresh tubers which eventually grow into separate plants.

5. Another well-known species of this order is *Alocasia macrorhiza* (*Can.* Marasaṇige), the gigantic tubers of which are eaten after the acrid and poisonous juice, characteristic of the family, is driven off by the process of cooking.

Allied Orders.

The **Screw-Pine** (*Pandamus odoratissimus*—*Can.* Kēdage: *Mal.* Kētaki; *San.* Kētakī) belongs to the *Pandanaceæ*. It is often planted for fences on account of its sword-shaped, sharply-toothed, spinous leaves, which are also used for matting. Like the Mangrove tree, it forms numerous adventitious roots from the lower part of its trunk which look like artificial props. The male flowers, growing on a long, pendulous spadix, enclosed within large, leaf-like, yellow bracts, yield a most delightful fragrance. The fruit borne on separate trees (diœcious!) is, similar to the pine-apple, a mass of united, fibrous drupes.

The Duckweed Family (*Lemnaceæ*) is another allied order. The **Common Duckweed** (*Lemna globosa*—*Can.* Nirāṭa) is a minute, scale-like, green water-plant kept horizontally on the surface of stagnant water by one long, vertical root hanging in the water. The plant flowers rarely and is chiefly propagated by side-shoots issuing from the mother plant. They multiply at such a rate that whole ponds become covered with them, as with a green carpet, in a very short time.

Somewhat larger than the Common Duckweed is *Pistia stratiotes,* also a floating herb, but with a rosette of wedge-shaped leaves and a tuft of numerous fibrous roots hanging in the water.

29. Order: The Lily Family.

(Liliaceæ.)

Herbs with parallel-veined leaves. Perianth regular, 6-leaved. Ovary superior.

The Gloriosa (*Gloriosa superba*).

(*Can.* Karaḍi-kaṇṇu, Šivašakti-baḷḷi. *Mal.* Mēttōnni. *Tam.* Kāndaḷ. *San.* Amrata, Haripriya.)

1. The Gloriosa is one of our most beautiful ornamental plants. During the rains you find it shooting in the lane, bordered thickly by huge Euphorbia and Aloe, or in Bamboo-thickets. The grace of its form amidst the stout and ugly plants with their fierce thorns and spikes, and the gaiety and warmth of its flowers amidst the sullen and cold grey of the surroundings have, no doubt, given cause to the superb name the flower bears.

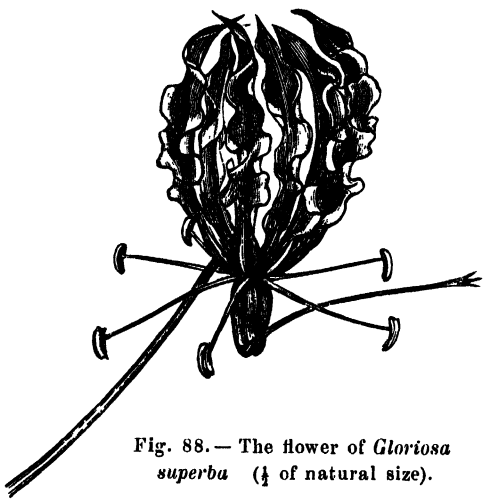


Fig. 88. — The flower of *Gloriosa superba* (¼ of natural size).

2. It is a fragile, weak **Climber** that sprouts up from biennial tubers, hidden under the ground. The round, green stem is very slender and long, so that it is obliged to seek the support of other plants or things. For this purpose it uses its leaves which are tapering tendril-wise asking for something to curl round it and climb. And thus the plant raises its top to the free air and full sunlight "unfurling its fire-flowers like banners of triumph".

3. The **Flowers** (fig. 88) are exceptionally beautiful. They are placed in large racemes and hence become visible from a great distance. Each flower consists of 6 long, narrow, waved petals,

which are bright yellow with scarlet tips at first; as they grow older and older, they become darker and darker crimson and bend more and more back. The 6 stamens stand out at right angles from the petals. They are very long, and their yellow anthers are suspended in the middle so that they look like so many little hammers. The pistil in the middle consists of a threefold carpel and a long style which is bent at an acute angle just where it leaves the ovary. The flower has no scent, but by its showy colours it is able to attract insects to fertilize it. Notice also the fruits which open and expose the seeds which are covered with a reddish pulp. The plant is poisonous.



Fig. 89.—The White Lily (*Lilium candidum*).

Other Lilies.

The family of the Lilies to which the Gloriosa belongs, is much celebrated in poetry. The **White Lily,** *Lilium candidum* (fig. 89), growing in temperate climates, is the emblem of purity.

Other plants belonging to this order are the **Onion** (*Allium cepa*—*Can.* Nīruḷḷi; *Mal.* Īruḷḷi; *Tam.* Īruḷḷi; *Tel.* Nīruḷḷi; *Hin.* Pyāj), the **Garlic** (*Allium sativum*—*Can.* Beḷḷuḷḷi; *Mal., Tam., Tel.* Veḷḷuḷḷi; *Hin.* Lasun), the **Leek** (*Allium ampeloperasum*). the **Dragon Tree,** *Dracœna ferrea* (fig. 90), with copper-coloured leaves, crowded together at the top of the stem, and panicles of small purplish flowers, and the **Wild Asparagus** (*Asparagus sarmentosus*—*Can.* Halavumakkaḷatāyi; *Mal.* Čadāvēlikiḷaṅu; *Tam.* Čāttiravēri; *Tel.* Čallagaḍḍalu). The latter has no bulb like most of the other Lily plants, but a bundle of many long, perennial tubers, from which numerous sprouts shoot up. The roots are very long and are thus able to carry water and food from a great distance.

The delicate climbing stem has thorns turned downwards (necessary for climbing, compare Rose, page 37). The leaves are reduced to filiform, recurved needles. The white flowers are small but numerous, and form racemes from the axils of the thorns. The fruit is a red berry. — The tubers are used medicinally.

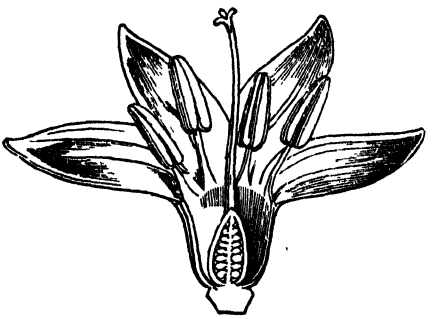


Fig. 90. — Flower of *Dracæna*, in longitudinal section. (2 segments of the petal are removed).

The Bulb of the Onion.

The bulbs of the Onion deserve our special notice. People generally call all those parts of a plant which are under the ground, roots. Roots proper are, indeed, under the ground, or, at any rate, grow downwards, shunning the light and seeking the ground, when they issue from the upper part of a plant, *e. g.*, the aërial roots of the Banyan tree or those of the Mangrove; but things like the bulb of the Onion, the tubers of the Potato plant, or the root-stock of Ginger, are not roots. They are a sort of stem, growing under the ground for certain reasons. To understand the nature of a bulb, we take an Onion and cut it through. We see a compact mass at the lower end (near the fibrous roots), and a number of concentric, overlapping leaves or scales above it. Within the scaly leaves we can often clearly distinguish leaf- and flower-buds.

The bulb is of great *importance* for the plant. During the greater part of the year no rain moistens the ground which becomes hard and dry, and all those plants die which are not specially furnished with protective arrangements against drought. They are called *annuals,* as they do not live for more than a year (*Latin: annus* = year). Other herbs can live through the whole year (*perennial*). It is generally the underground stem which enables them to do so. Their upper parts wither likewise under the scorching rays of the sun, but as soon as the first showers of rain fall, they awake, as it were, from their sleep, and

in some cases send up flowers even before their leaves appear.

The outer scales of the bulb are dry and leathery and form a *protective coat* over the inner juicy leaves, preventing loss of moisture by evaporation. They also sometimes contain a poisonous substance, saving them from the attacks of animals.

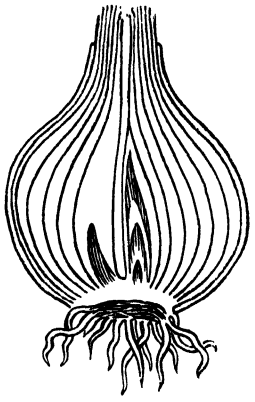


Fig. 91. — Longitudinal section of the bulb of an Onion.

Bulbs, like the Potato tubers (page 66) or the root-stocks of Ginger and other plants, are a *food store* for the coming season. At the base of the bulb there is a tuft of fibrous roots, which gather salts and water from the soil. But, as we have already learnt, this food does not form the chief material of which plants build up their body. They require another kind of food in addition to the water and the salts of the soil, namely the carbonic acid in the air, and this they obtain by their leaves. Starch is formed out of these two kinds of food which is converted into sugar and other substances, distributed from cell to cell all over the plant, and used up wherever growth is taking place, or stored up as a reserve of material for future use. Such a store of food is the bulb. When in the beginning of the rainy season the plant awakes, it sends forth, from the solid white base of its bulb (which is the shortened stem of the plant), not only roots, but also a rapidly growing shoot with great and numerous leaves, such as could never be produced at this rate by the plant without a rich reserve of food.

The bulb becomes soft and shrinks as the plant grows and as its contents are being used up. But after a short time, new young bulbs are produced from the stem in the axils of the scaly leaves. As the plant grows and the outer scales of the mother bulb wither one by one, these young bulbs move to the periphery and grow larger and larger, the mother bulb storing more and more food in them for the future growth of the daughter bulbs. At last the latter come apart and grow as independent plants. In this way the Onion is able to *multiply* as well as from seed.

30. Order: The Amaryllis Family.

(Amaryllideæ.)

Herbs very much like the Lilies. Ovary inferior.

The Asiatic Crinum (*Crinum asiaticum*).

(*Can.* Vishamuṅguli. *Mal.* Veluttapoḷatāli. *Tam.* Tudaivāĕi. *Tel.* Kesariĕeṭṭu. *San.* Vishamandala.)

This is a perennial herb with large bulbs, pretty common everywhere, and very conspicuous by its large, glossy, radical leaves (compare Ginger), from among which a scape, 2 feet long, arises bearing an umbel of numerous white flowers.

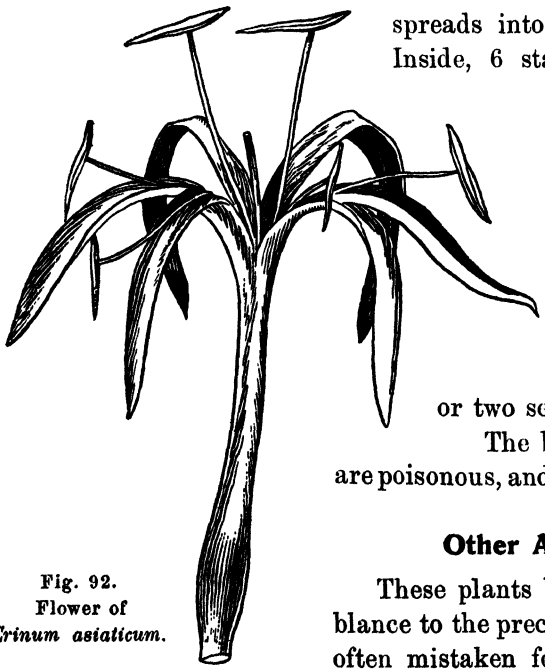


Fig. 92. Flower of *Crinum asiaticum*.

The flower is a tube that spreads into 6 equal segments. Inside, 6 stamens are attached to the tube. The ovary is below the tube of the perianth, and if the latter is split, the long style can be traced down through the tube to the ovary. The fruit is a berry with one or two seeds.

The bulb and the leaves are poisonous, and are used as emetics.

Other Amaryllids.

These plants bear a close resemblance to the preceding order and are often mistaken for true lilies. The principal mark by which they are distinguished from the Lilies is the *inferior ovary*. One of their most useful members

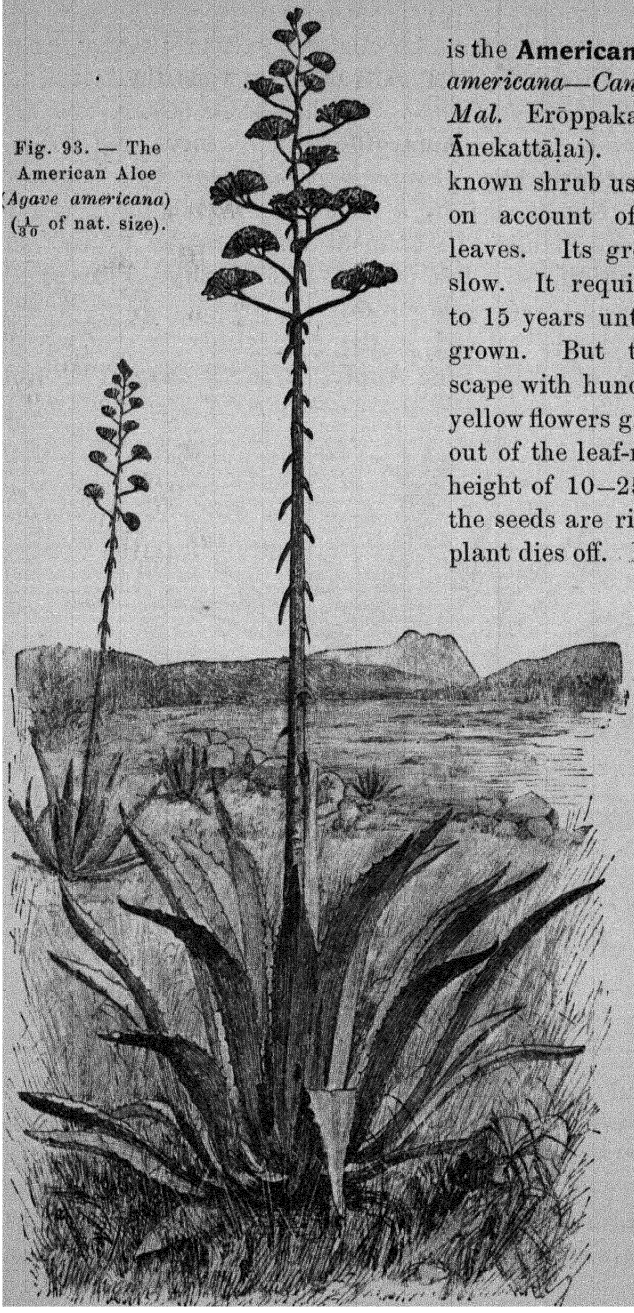


Fig. 93. — The American Aloe (*Agave americana*) ($\frac{1}{30}$ of nat. size).

is the **American Aloe** (*Agave americana*—*Can.* Ānekattāḷi; *Mal.* Erōppakaita; *Tam.* Ānekattāḷai). It is a well-known shrub used for fences on account of its thorny leaves. Its growth is very slow. It requires about 10 to 15 years until it is fully grown. But then a high scape with hundreds of pale, yellow flowers grow suddenly out of the leaf-rosette, to the height of 10–25 feet. After the seeds are ripe, the whole plant dies off. Ere this event takes place, however, numerous shoots issue, like children, all round the root-stock. The Agave was imported into India from America where it inhabits the dry deserts of the tropical and sub-tropical zone. By its succulent leaves which are covered by a leathery epi-

dermis it is well suited for such climates (compare Cactus, page 42). — A very strong, tough fibre is obtained from the leaves.

Some of the Amaryllids have very handsome flowers and are prized in gardens, so the **Amaryllis** with its large, red flower-bells, the **Eucharis Lily** (*Eucharis grandiflora*) with fragrant, white flowers, embellished by a membrane within the perianth stretching from filament to filament and forming a cup, the white **Pancratium,** and the pretty, rose **Zephyr Flower** or American Crocus (*Zephyranthes rosea*).

An order closely related to the Amaryllids is that of the *Bromeliaceæ* to which the **Pine Apple** (*Bromelia ananas*) belongs.

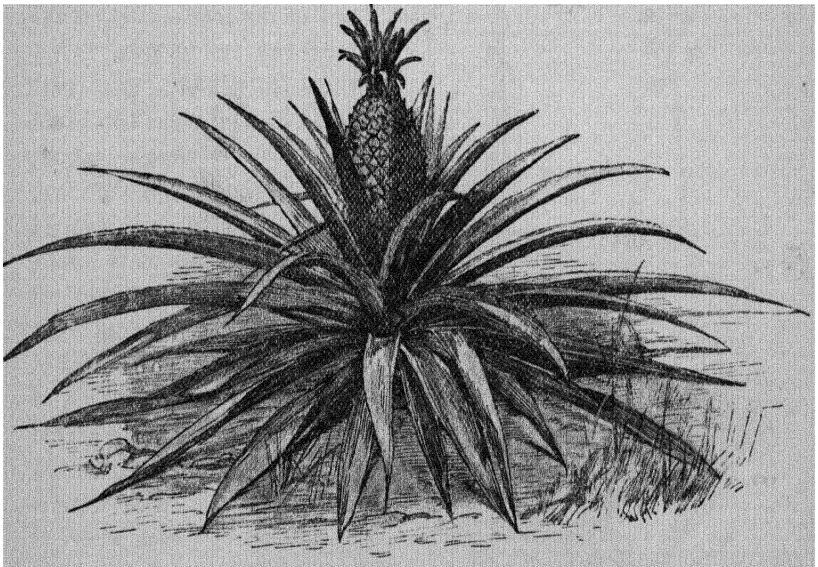


Fig. 94. — The Pine Apple (*Bromelia ananas*). $\frac{1}{12}$ of natural size.

The sweet and tasteful fruit consists of numerous flowers and bracts, all grown together in a mass. The crown of leaves, which looks so out of place, growing apparently out of the fruit, belongs really to the flowerless top of the spike and is capable of developing into a fresh plant. — The fibre of the leaves is used and the plant is often grown for fences.

31. Order: The Orchid Family.

(Orchideæ.)

Herbs with very irregular, conspicuous flowers. Stamens and style united into a *column*.— Either terrestrial with tuberous roots and annual, simple stems, or epiphytes with perennial stems and branches, thickened and shortened into a bulb-like mass (*pseudo-bulbs*).

The Round-leaved Habenaria (*Habenaria rotundifolia*).

(*Can.* Nelatāvare, Oreletāvare.)

1. When the rains begin to moisten the ground after the long drought from October to May in Western India, the terrestrial Orchids, which are to be found in hills and dales, also awaken and send up their shoots to the light and air. For, their

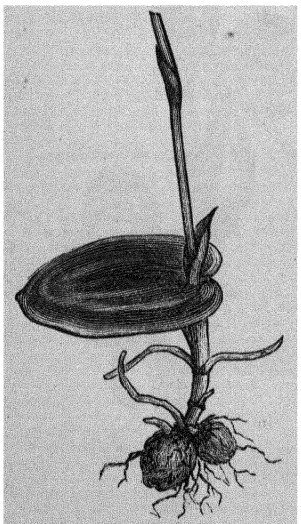


Fig. 95.— Tubers of *Habenaria rotundifolia* at the time of fruiting (½ of natural size).

Tubers enable them to form leaves and stems at once from the reserve food contained in them. This food is mainly starch and is so rich that, in some kinds, it can be used for the preparation of food for man, the "salep".

If the plant is dug out early in the season, a young bud can be seen in the axil of one of the dry scales that surround the shoot. This bud gradually swells and becomes a tuber, like the old one, so that, if we examine the plant at about the time of flowering, in July, its size is equal to that of the old one, the mother-tuber, which then already shows signs of shrivelling. If the plant is examined once more when the fruit is ripe, the mother-tuber will be found brown and withered, whereas the daughter-tuber will be firm, light-coloured, stuffed out, and provided with a bud at its upper end. These phenomena are the same

as those which we have noticed in the Potato tuber (page 66) and the bulb (page 113): The reserve food in the tuber is used for the building up of the leaves, flowers, and fruit of the plant, during which process the plant stores fresh food in a new tuber for use in the following year, and the old tuber being exhausted falls off and decays.

2. The sprout of *Habenaria rotundifolia* forms one or two round **Leaves** (fig. 95), pressed close to the ground. Their resemblance to the leaves of the Lotus-plant has given origin to the vernacular name *Nelatōvare,* which means Ground-lotus.— They are quite *smooth*. Being surrounded by the moist air of the monsoon, and growing in swampy soil which affords an ample supply of water, the plant can dispense with the protective coat of hairs which we frequently find on the stems and leaves of plants growing on dry soil and during the dry seasons. The leaves are *dark-green*, which is likewise referable to the habitat of the plant. Dark-coloured things, we know, absorb more heat than light-coloured ones. The higher the temperature of the leaves of a plant rises, the more abundant is the evaporation and hence the growth (see II. Part, Transpiration). The damp surroundings which naturally check the evaporation, are thus compensated for by the dark colour of the leaves.



Fig. 96.—Flower spike of *Habenaria rotundifolia* (2 times magnified).

The thick, fibrous roots which spring from the stem immediately over the tubers, are few and small; they are sufficient for the supply of water from the soil which is constantly humid during the time of its growth.

3. A slender, leafless stem, called scape, about six inches high, rises from the radical leaves and lifts the few **Flowers** over the tips of the grass around it. They thus become visible to passing insects which have to fertilize them.

Each flower is attached to what seems to be a short flower-stalk rising from the scape; but it is really the ovary, which can be proved by cutting it through and thus laying the ovules inside bare.

The perianth is composed of two sets of 3 leaves each. The middle petal of the outer set and the 2 upper or lateral petals of the inner set are bent together and form a hood to protect the inner organs. The 2 other outer petals are expanded, and the middle petal of the inner set, generally called the lip, is divided into 3 narrow lobes and drawn out into a long, slender spur. Close to the entrance to the spur we find the stigma of the pistil with a sticky surface, and above it, the stamen which contains two pollen-masses in a pouch each, which look like 2 small clubs and end in a gummy disk below, covered under a small, knob-like projection.

This very peculiar structure of the Orchid-flower is fully understood only when we study the mode of its *pollination by bees.*

The flowers are small, indeed, but their white colour makes them visible as they are raised by their stems above their surroundings. A bee seeing them alights on the expanded under-lip which affords a convenient landing-place. It then sets to stretch its proboscis into the spur in search of nectar. Just at the entrance to the spur are the projections which contain the sticky disks of the pollen-clubs under small lids. As the insect touches these with its head, they break up, and at once the sticky disks settle on the forehead of the insect. On leaving the flower the pollen masses are drawn out of their pouches and the bee flies away with them. If this process is imitated by gently inserting a pointed pencil into the spur and

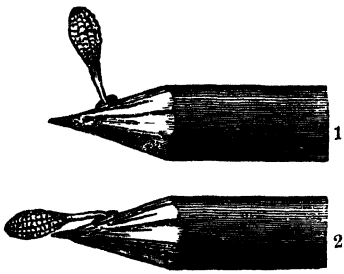


Fig. 97.—Pollen masses at the end of a pencil: 1. immediately on the withdrawal of it, 2. one or two minutes afterwards.

withdrawing it, one can see that the clubs which are erect in the beginning bend forwards after a minute or two. The same happens, of course, when the pollen-clubs are on the head of the bee. When it thus visits another flower, the pollen-masses must touch the stigma of it, and this will detach some or all of the pollen from the bee's head. The flower is thus fertilized.

4. The **Fruits** are capsules containing numerous powdery seeds which are shaken out and dispersed by the wind when the capsules split into their 6 valves.

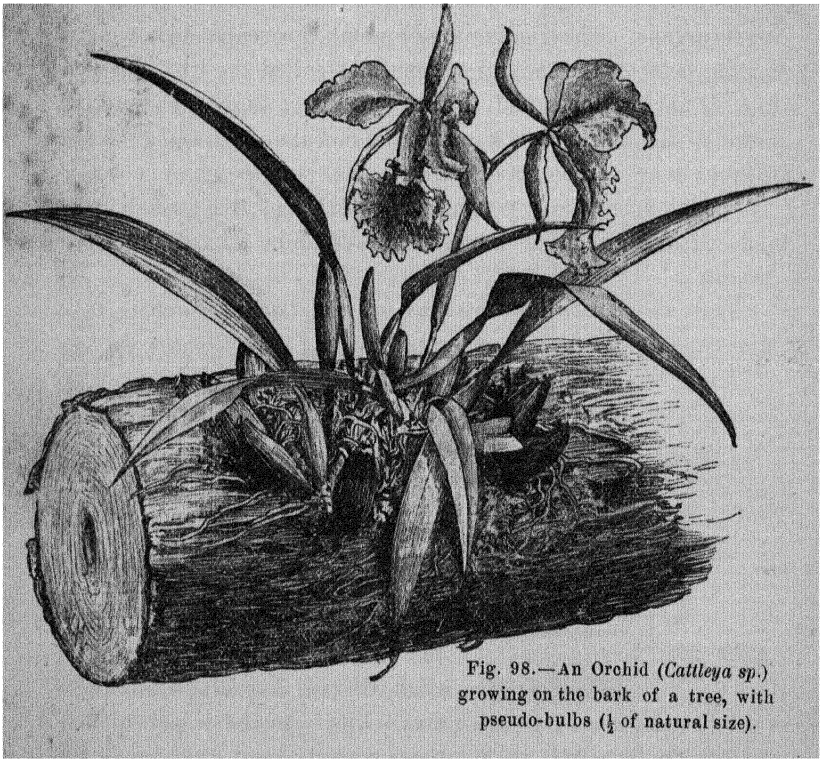


Fig. 98.—An Orchid (*Cattleya sp.*) growing on the bark of a tree, with pseudo-bulbs ($\frac{1}{2}$ of natural size).

Other Orchids.

The Orchid Family comprises more than 5000 species. Many of them have very showy flowers. They occur largely in the hill tracts of India, and as they do not get sufficient light on the ground in a forest, they frequently settle on the trunks and

branches of trees. They are, however, not parasitic, preying on the juice of the trees, like the Loranthus, but simply throw out cord-like aërial roots by which they attach themselves to the bark. They feed on the dust blown by the wind into the fissures of the bark, and on the rain and dew falling on them. Such a habitat must be unfavourable, indeed, during the rainless season; but in many genera of the Orchids this is compensated for by the lower joints of the stems or leaves becoming much thickened and fleshy (pseudo-bulbs), so as to resemble bulbs, where they store up each drop of water they can get.

A very common type of these epiphytic herbs is *Vanda Roxburghii* (*Can.* Marabāḷe), frequent on the Mango and Banyan trees. Note the axillary racemes of their sweet-scented, chequered, yellowish and purple flowers and the succulent, recurved leaves in which water is stored up!

Vanilla planifolia is cultivated for its fruit, which are taken when unripe and yield the well-known aromatic essence "Vanilla".

32. Order: The Ginger and Banana Family.

(Scitamineæ.)

Herbs with irregular flowers. Leaves pinnately nerved from the midrib.

The Ginger Plant (*Zingiber officinale*).

(*Can.* Çuṇṭhi. *Mal.* Iñči. *Tam.* Iñji. *Tel.* Çuṇṭhi. *Hin.* Sōṇṭ.)

1. This is a herb with a creeping **Root-stock** (*rhizome*) containing a great deal of starch and an etherial oil which gives the tubers an agreeable aroma and a warm, bitterish taste. It is cultivated, and the root-stocks are used as spices and in medicine.

Ginger grows well in the shade and may be advantageously cultivated under fruit trees, such as the Mango or the Jack, the trees themselves being benefited, if the land underneath is kept cultivated.

If we examine the root-stock of a Ginger plant, as it is sold in the bazaar, we shall see that it contains buds or "eyes" at its

ends and some scars in its middle portion (fig. 99). If it is planted, the buds will produce leaves and, perhaps, flowers, whilst new buds will be formed at the further end of the root-stock. This *under-ground stem* thus creeps along under the soil producing fresh buds every year, slowly moving away from the spot where the former plant grew and thus always seeking fresh, unused soil. The old portion marked with the scars of withered plants decays, and as the side-buds similarly creep along in opposite directions, independent plants are produced eventually. The branching of the root-stock is, therefore, *a means of propagation,* and this is by no means an unimportant one as the Ginger plant rarely flowers to produce seed.



Fig. 99.—Rhizome of Ginger *(Zingiber officinale).* ½ of natural size.

2. **Leaves.**—The Ginger plant grows during the monsoon and so does not require a protective coat of hairs on its stem and leaves (*cf.* Habenaria, page 115), or other means of checking the process of evaporation, such as a limited surface of the leaf-blades. It can, therefore, develop large and long leaves. The leaves, like all the other parts of the plant, contain the volatile oil which we have noticed in the root-stock and which gives them a fine aroma when bruised.

3. The **Flowers** appear not on the leafy stem, but are produced on separate scapes that rise from the root-stock, a little removed from the leafy stem. They form a spike at the top of the scape, being supported and protected by imbricated, concave bracts.

The perianth of the flower is tubular and has a double border of 3 lobes each. Within the perianth there are 6 "leaves" in two sets, belonging to the staminal series of which, however, only one bears an anther. Of the rest 2 are reduced to minute teeth, nestling around the base of the style, whereas one is enlarged to a violet, petal-like lip and two are found as short teeth or lobes at each side of the lip. The anther-bearing stamen is drawn

out into a purple sheath clasping the upper part of the style, whose funnel-shaped stigma overtops all parts of the flower. The arrangement of these inner organs clearly shows that self-pollination is impossible.

Other Plants of this Order.

Many plants of this order have root-stocks which are useful either as food-stuffs like **Arrowroot,** prepared from *Maranta arundinacea* and *Curcuma angustifolia* (*Can.* Kūve; *Tam.* Kūkai) and others, or as spices such as Ginger, or as dyes like **Turmeric** (*Curcuma longa*—*Can.* Arisina; *Mal.* Maṅṅaḷ; *Tam.* Maṅčal; *Tel.* Pasupu; *Hin.* Haldi).

Besides, the seeds of many Scitamineæ are aromatic and often very pungent, as the **Cardamoms,** the product of *Elettaria cardamomum* (*Can.* Ēlakki; *Mal.* Ēlam; *Hind.* Ēlāči). But the most useful of all is the Banana or Plantain tree.

The Banana or Plantain Tree (*Musa paradisiaca*).

(Plate No. 636.)

(*Can.* Bāle. *Mal.* Vāla. *Tam.* Vālai. *Tel.* Araṭi. *Hin.* Kēli. *San.* Kadali.)

1. **Stem and Leaves.**—The stem, formed from the sheaths of the leaves, attains a height of from 15 to 20 feet and is very succulent. In its centre is a white, solid substance, forming a cylinder throughout its length.—It is used for curry. When broken across, it shows bundles of spiral vessels to great perfection.

The leaves are *very large,* 6 to 8 feet long and 2 feet broad, and would, therefore, offer much resistance to the wind, the pressure of which the weak stem could hardly withstand. To prevent the plant being thus overturned, nature corrects herself in a very simple manner: The leaves have a strong, fleshy midrib, from which the veins run to the margin at right angles, and they *split readily when swayed by the wind*; the leaf now acts like a pinnate leaf, the various parts letting the wind pass between them, and thus lessening the resistance (*cf.* Cocoanut tree, page 99). The midrib forms a canal on the upper surface of the

leaf, which leads the rain water to the central part of the plant, which consequently need not have a very wide net-work of roots. The ribs, the leaf-stalks, of which the ribs are only a continuation, and the stem-clasping sheaths are, moreover, beautifully adapted to preserve water; for they contain numerous cavities which are filled with water when there is plenty, and out of which the plant derives its supply when the rains cease.

2. **Flowers.**—The continuation of the central cylinder beyond the stem forms the flower-stalk. It is, therefore, evident that a tree can bear but once, after which it is cut down, and a new shoot springs up from the root, by which means the Plantain is chiefly propagated. The closely packed, conical *inflorescence* (fig. 100) inclines downward by its own weight in a graceful curve. The flowers are arranged in whorls or clusters. Each whorl of flowers is protected under an ovate, concave, leathery spathe, crimson on the inside and with a pale bloom on the outside. Eight or more of these, nearest the base of the huge, drooping spike, embrace a double row of 10 to 16 flowers which are fertile. With the maturity of each successive row of flowers, the spathe reclines and falls off, and the fruit appears. The rest of the whorls—and they are very numerous—expand in succession for 2 or 3 months and contain similar double rows of flowers which are abortive and fall with their spathes.

The *perianth* (fig. 100, 4) consists of 2 dissimilar leaves, of which the exterior and larger one is bent back. The stamens (fig. 100, 3, front petal removed) are ordinarily 5 in number. But the stamens of the flowers in the 8 or more first whorls are sterile, whereas their large styles, crowned with a clammy stigma, are fertile. Inversely, the pistil is sterile and the stamens are fertile in the flowers at the tip of the spike, which are dropped after flowering.

3. The well-known **Fruit** is an oblong berry, tapering at each end and of a fleshy consistency (fig. 100, 6). The numerous seeds in it are usually not developed. The plant is, therefore, not propagated by seeds.

With the production of fruit the growth of the tree ceases. The life-time is from 9 months to 3 years, and under good condi-



Fig. 100. — BANANA or PLANTAIN *(Musa paradisiaca)*.

2. Flower head. 3. Single flower (front petal removed). 4. The same, petal not removed. 5. 6. 7. Fruit.

tions ordinarily about a year. During this short time the Plantain tree develops into that stately and magnificent tree, a phenomenon which is unique even in the tropics. The plant is, therefore, highly esteemed by the Hindus as the emblem of plenty and fertility, and is as such in constant requisition at their marriages and other festivals for ornamenting the entrance of houses and temples.

Besides the fruit, which is eaten in many ways and also dried and made into flour, the fibres of the sheaths and of the leaf-stalks are used. The leaves are used by Brahmins instead of plates.

4. In the life-story of this plant, which has been cultivated for ages, we see a great **Anomaly**: *The seeds of the plant are not properly developed.* This is the result of man's interference with the natural growth of the plant, as can be observed in the wild species, *Musa superba,* often grown in gardens for its gigantic, ornamental leaves. The fruit of this kind bears numerous black seeds embedded in very little pulp, which produce healthy plants. By constantly preferring and selecting sorts with richer pulp and paying no attention to the seeds which were useless to man and not necessary for reproduction, a variety was eventually obtained which produced nothing but pulp in the fruit. (Compare the inferiority of the seeds of the Potato plant, page 65.)

33. Order: The Grass Family.

(Gramineæ.)

Herbs (except the Bamboo), with a jointed, hollow, leafy stem, called *haulm.* Leaves entire, straight-veined, sheathed. Flowers glumaceous, *i. e.*, consisting of dry and scaly *glumes.* Stamens generally 3 (6 in Rice). Ovary crowned with 2 feathery stigmas. Seeds mealy and often nutritious.

The Rice Plant (*Oriyza sativa*).

(Plate No. 626.)

(*Can.* Bhatta. *Mal.* Ari. *San.* Vrīhi.)

1. **Importance.**— Rice is the principal food of about $\frac{1}{3}$ of the population of the world, and is, therefore, the most useful and

most important of all cereals. It is found wild in some parts of India, but has from time immemorial been cultivated throughout the warmer regions of the world. What bread is to the people of the temperate zone, that is boiled rice to those of warmer countries.

2. **The Grain and its Germination.**— The rice grain is a small, greyish-yellow thing. The seed proper is enclosed in 2 hairy husks or glumes, the larger of which is five-nerved and sometimes terminating in a bristle (awn). If the husks are carefully removed, the whitish or pinkish seed appears with the small germ at its lower end.

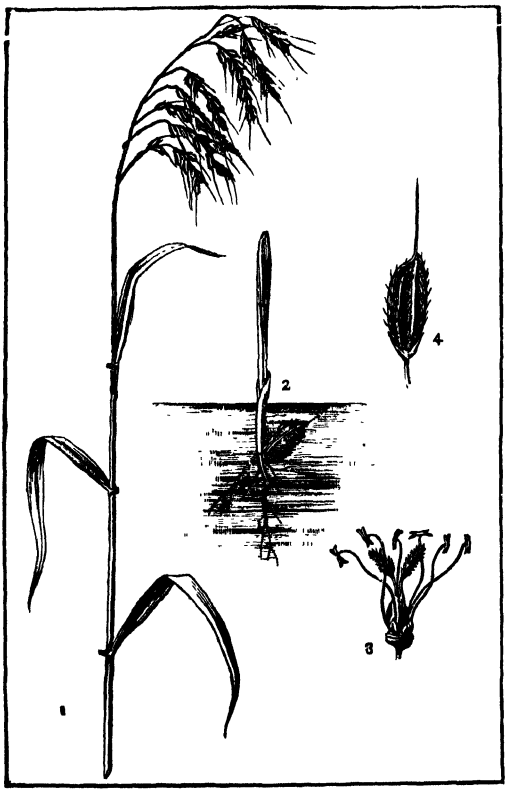


Fig. 101.— The Rice Plant *(Oryza sativa)*.
1. Flowering plant. 2. Seedling. 3. Flower. 4. Grain.

In the Pea (page 25) we have found the germ or embryo to be lying between 2 thick seed-leaves or cotyledons. The structure of the grain of Rice is quite different. Here we have a very small germ at one end of the seed, the remaining part of the grain being filled up with a mealy substance, called *albumen*. The germ has not a pair of seed-lobes like the Pea, one opposite the other, but a series of very small, rudimentary leaves of which the outer, sheathing the inner ones, is regarded as a seed-leaf or cotyledon. Hence Rice

is grouped under the *monocotyledons*. The inner leaves belong to the plumule, and the lower part is the radicle.

If the seed is sown, it will be seen, as in the Pea, that the rootlet of the embryo makes its appearance first. But whereas the root of the Pea elongates forming a tap-root from which side-roots are thrown off, the radicle of the young Paddy plant sends forth *numerous similar roots from small sheaths* at the base of the seed forming a bundle of fibrous roots. Meanwhile the bud of the plantlet grows upwards piercing the earth or mud lying over it, with its spear-like point.

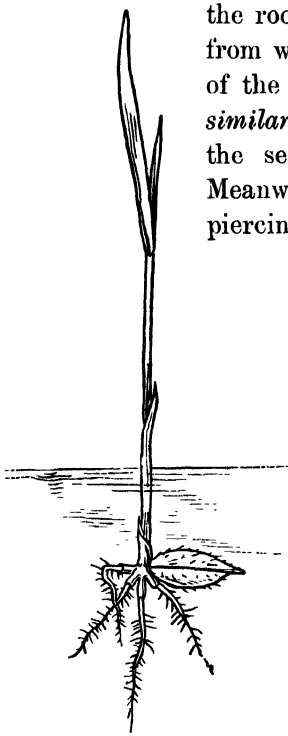


Fig. 102.— Young Paddy Plant.

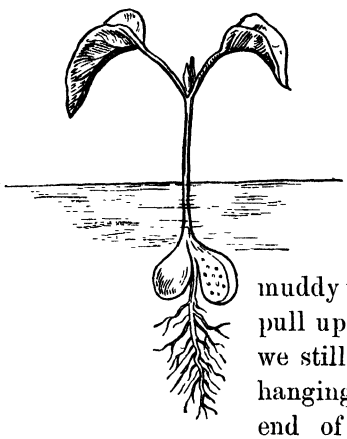


Fig. 103. Young Pea Plant.

Rice is sown in wet land. After a few days their thin blades peep out of the muddy water. If we pull up one of them, we still see the seed hanging on the lower end of the young plant. But the husks are now empty. The little Paddy plant has used up the contents for forming its tiny roots and blades. From this we learn that the mealy substance which filled the seed, must be of the same importance to the young Rice plant as the thick seed-lobes of the Pea seed are to that plant. It is *a deposit of nourishing matter for the support of the young plant in its first stages of growth.*

It contains about 80 % of starch and 7 % of albuminoids (substances like the white of an egg). As these two stuffs constitute also the essential parts of the human food, we can understand why rice is so useful as a food.

3. **Stem.**—After some time the little plants, sown closely in small seed-beds, are taken up and planted out again. If this were not done the plants would choke one another. This process also forces the plant to form more numerous and stronger roots which are helpful for a rich crop. Roots grow freely out of the lower nodes of the stem.

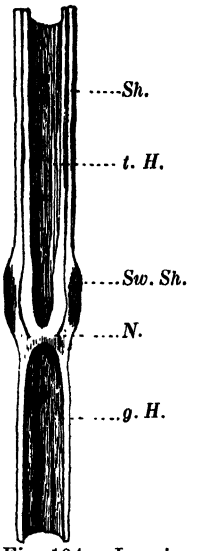


Fig. 104.—Longitudinal section of a Grass-haulm. *g. H.* Fullgrown and *t. H.* tender part of an internode. *N.* Node. *Sh.* Sheath of a leaf. *Sw. Sh.* Swelling of the leaf-sheath above the node.

The plants soon produce stems, called *haulms or culms,* usually 3 to 4 feet long. Although they are very thin, they are strong enough to bear the weight of their leaves and that of the grain in the panicles. They are *elastic* and, when blown to and fro by the wind, suffer no injury. As in the stems of the Labiatæ (page 76) it is the outer part of the stem that suffers the greatest pressure when so bent. Those plants, therefore, have the four edges of their stems strengthened by strong fibers. In the grass haulm *a round tube* is formed by such strong fibers. The tissue in the middle disappears, as it has

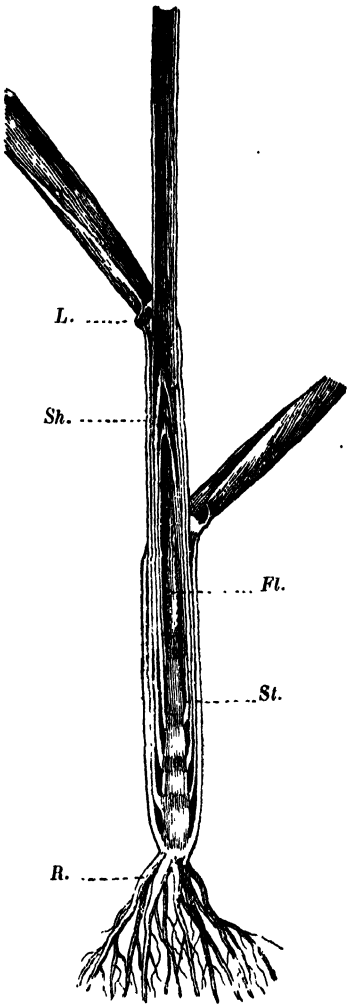


Fig. 105.—Longitudinal section of a young Grass-haulm. The stem (*St.*) with its leaves and inflorescence (*Fl.*) grows under the protection of the sheaths (*Sh.*) of the older leaves. *L.* Ligule. (Natural size.)

to bear no pressure when bent: *the haulm is hollow.* Only the *nodes are solid* and divide the haulm into various parts, called internodes. This serves to strengthen the haulm. It is also noticeable that that part which is to suffer the greatest tension, namely *the base* of the haulm, *has its nodes nearest together* in order to make it stronger at that particular part. — A longitudinal section of the haulm (fig. 104) shows that the swollen parts above the nodes are due not to the haulm, but to the leaves.

4. **Leaf.** — Each leaf consists of two quite different parts, the *sheath* and the *blade.* Where both join, there is a small membraneous appendage, called the *ligule.* The sheaths arise from the nodes and form tubes protecting the stem. If a young Paddy plant is cut lengthwise, as in the illustration fig. 105, the sheaths will be seen to form a hollow space, in which the stem *(St.)*, the younger leaves, and even the flower-buds *(Fl.)* are enclosed. These parts are so extremely tender that even a feeble breeze could break or the heat of the sun scorch them. *The sheaths* of the older leaves that rise above them thus *form a protection to these tender parts.* Only when they have attained sufficient strength, they grow out of their protecting cover. Besides, they afford the haulm more support, which it requires very much, as those parts of it which lie immediately over the nodes continue to grow for a longer period. This is a peculiarity of the grass-haulm. We know that the stems and stalks of other plants grow only at their ends; *the stems of the Grasses,* however, *grow above every node,* a fact which explains why Grass plants generally have such a rapid growth. A Bamboo stem, for instance, has been known to grow 3 feet in 24 hours.

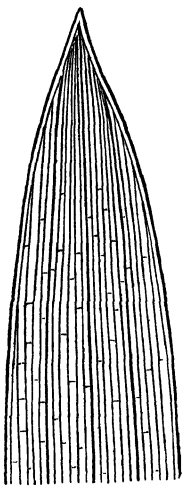


Fig. 106. — The tip of a Grass blade.

The *blade is linear* and waves like a flag in the wind. Consequently the wind meets with no resistance from it and cannot easily overturn the plant. The *nerves* or ribs of the leaf run

in parallel lines from the base to the tip of it, in accordance with its linear structure (fig. 106).

The ligule between the sheath and the blade prevents the rain-water running down the leaves from entering under the sheath and thus rotting the tender parts of the culm.

If the leaves are drawn swiftly through the hand, they cut. This is due to the presence of *silica,* a hard substance, which constitutes some of the hardest stones like quartz and flint, and is deposited in large quantities in the cell-walls of the epidermis of the leaf and stem. This is certainly not without its good purpose. The hard silica is not only a means of support to the plant, but protects it also from the attacks of a number of small animals, such as snails, caterpillars and insects, that would feed on the leaves and stalks but for this substance which interferes with their feeding. Bigger animals, like cattle, do not mind it. But there are genera of Grass on the ghauts which are disliked even by cattle for their coarseness.

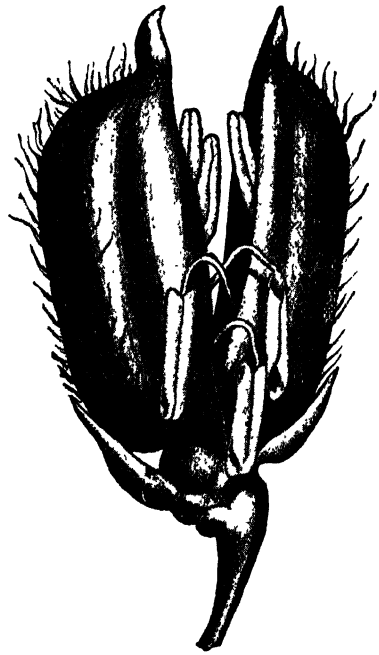


Fig. 107.— The flower of the Paddy Plant (very much enlarged).

5. We now come to the **Flower** and **Fruit.** The flowers are supported by a panicle which bows down with the weight of the ripening grains. The short lateral flower-branches are wiry and bear one-flowered, stalked spikelets. The flower-leaves, generally called *glumes,* are hard, dry, and scaly. We can distinguish an outer pair representing the calyx, and an inner one, the corolla. The former are very small, the latter, larger and boat-shaped. These enclose the inner organs, consisting of 6 stamens and the pistil with 2 feathery styles. The larger of the 2 inner glumes which embraces the opposite

smaller one with its incurved edges, sometimes ends in a bristle, called the *awn* (fig. 101, 4 and 107).

We know that, if seeds are to be produced, the pollen of the stamens must fall on the style of the pistil. The two glumes that enclose these organs, therefore, open when the organs are sufficiently developed. There is a wise arrangement in the Grass-flower in order to make it open in proper time. It would be quite useless for it to open during the rain, for the rain would wash the flower-dust away, and the pistil could not be fertilized. There are, therefore, 2 small, glabrous, fleshy scales, called *lodicules*, within the 2 firmly closed flower-glumes. They swell when the sun shines warmly on the flowers and press the glumes slightly open, so that the 6 stamens can protrude their anthers. The wind then takes the pollen and carries it to the next flower, which catches it readily with its *feathery style*. After this the anthers fall off, the lodicules shrink, and the glumes close again, like two lids, and under their protection the fruit ripens.

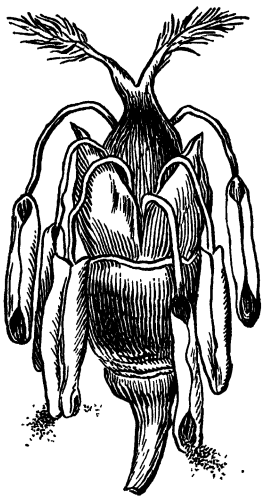


Fig. 108. — The flower of the Paddy Plant. The glumes are removed so as to show the 2 lodicules and the inner, reproductive organs.

6. **Enemies.**— From the seed-bed to the granary this plant is surrounded by a host of enemies, against whom the cultivator has to wage war: numberless ill-weeds misappropriate its light, space, and food in the field; parasitic Fungi, of which Rust, Smut and Bunt may chiefly be mentioned, settle on haulm, blade and flower; grubs and other larvæ of several insects feed on its roots; birds and other animals eat away the ripening grain; and even in the godowns rats, white-ants, the grain weevil, and other uninvited guests can do a great deal of damage to the stored rice.

Other Grasses.

1. **Wheat** (*Triticum vulgare,* Plate No. 626 — *Can.* Gōdhi; *Mal.* Kōtampam; *Tam.* Gōdumai; *Tel.* Gōdhumalu). Among the

cereals, cultivated in India, Wheat comes next in importance to Rice. It yields a fine, white flour, which is used for baking bread and for preparing starch.

2. **Maize or Indian Corn** (*Zea mays,* Plate No. 631 — *Can.* Mekkejōḷa; *Mal.* Ponticcōḷam; *Tam.* Mokkaiccōḷam) is of American origin, but is now largely grown also in India. As the few roots developed under the ground are not sufficient to fix the robust culm, with its long, ribbon-like leaves, strong enough in the ground, the lower part of the stem forms adventitious roots (Plate 625, fig. 1), which, like the ropes of a flagstaff, hold it firmly. Unlike all other grasses, Maize is monœcious. The male flowers (fig. 2, 3, 4, 5) are at the top of the plant in a large panicle, the female (fig. 6, 7) are produced lower down in the axils of the leaves and form dense spikes, enclosed in numerous sheaths which protect the tender flowers. But as the stigma must be exposed to the wind (why?), the styles are drawn out into long filaments, which protrude from the top of the sheath like a long, silky tassel. The large, mostly yellow grains are densely packed on a thick core, thus forming what is known as cob. A longitudinal section through a grain (fig. 8) shows the oblique germ at the base of copious albumen.

Maize is a good food for men and domestic animals. The stalks are valuable as fodder, especially when the cobs are disposed of in the green state.

3. **Other Cereals** grown in India are

Indian Millet (*Sorghum vulgare* — *Can.* Biḷē jōḷa; *Mal.* Čōḷam),

Barley (*Hordeum hexastichum* — *Can.* Javegōdi; *Tel.* Yavalu; *San.* Yava),

Oats (*Avena sativa* — *Can.* Tōkēgōdhi),

Ragi (*Eleusine coracana* — *Can.* Rāgi),

Little Millet (*Panicum miliaceum* — *Can.* Bagaru),

Italian Millet (*P. italicum* — *Can.* Navaṇe), and

Panicum frumentaceum (*Can.* Sāme).

4. **Sugarcane** (*Saccharum officinarum,* Plate No. 631 — *Can.* Kabbu; *Mal.* Karimbu; *Tam.* Karumbu; *Tel.* Ċeruku; *Hin.* Gannā). — This plant is indigenous to India and yields a higher proportion of sugar than any other plant cultivated for sugar. The peren-

nial root-stock produces numerous, solid culms growing to a height of 10 feet which bear tufts of leaves and a spreading panicle of glumaceous flowers (fig. 109, 2 and 3) at their end. As the old leaves fall off and leave scars, the nodes of the culms become visible. The internodes (fig. 109, 4) are often striped with various shades of red and green.

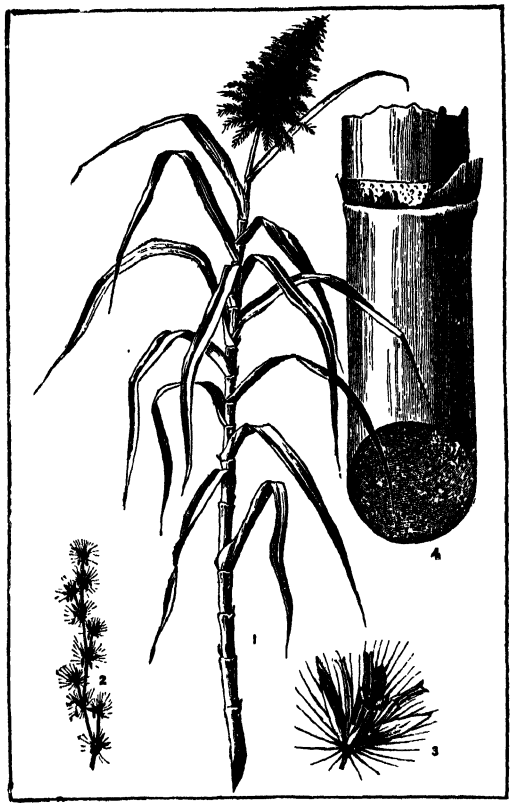


Fig. 109.—The Sugarcane (*Saccharum officinarum*). 1. Flowering cane. 2. Part of panicle. 3. Single flower. 4. Culm, showing solid consistency and node.

The canes are cut before flowering, as the juice is then in greatest perfection. They are divested of their leaves and of their tops, which contain little or no sugary pith, and are then crushed in the sugar-mill so as to obtain the sweet juice. This is mixed with lime, boiled down, clarified, and then cooled, and taken to the market as refined sugar.

5. **Bamboo** (*Bambusa arundinacea* — *Can.* Biduru; *Mal.* Mūṅgil; *Tam.* Mūṅgil; *Tel.* Veduru; *Hin.* Bhāsā). — The largest of all Grasses is the majestic Bamboo. The innumerable applications of its stems for building houses, sheds, bridges, and for the manufacture of all sorts of furniture and household articles are well-known.

6. **The Distribution of the Grasses.** — We have seen that the greater part of the food of man is derived from plants belonging to the family of the Grasses. It is, therefore, no matter of astonishment to learn that the Grasses, such as Rice, Wheat,

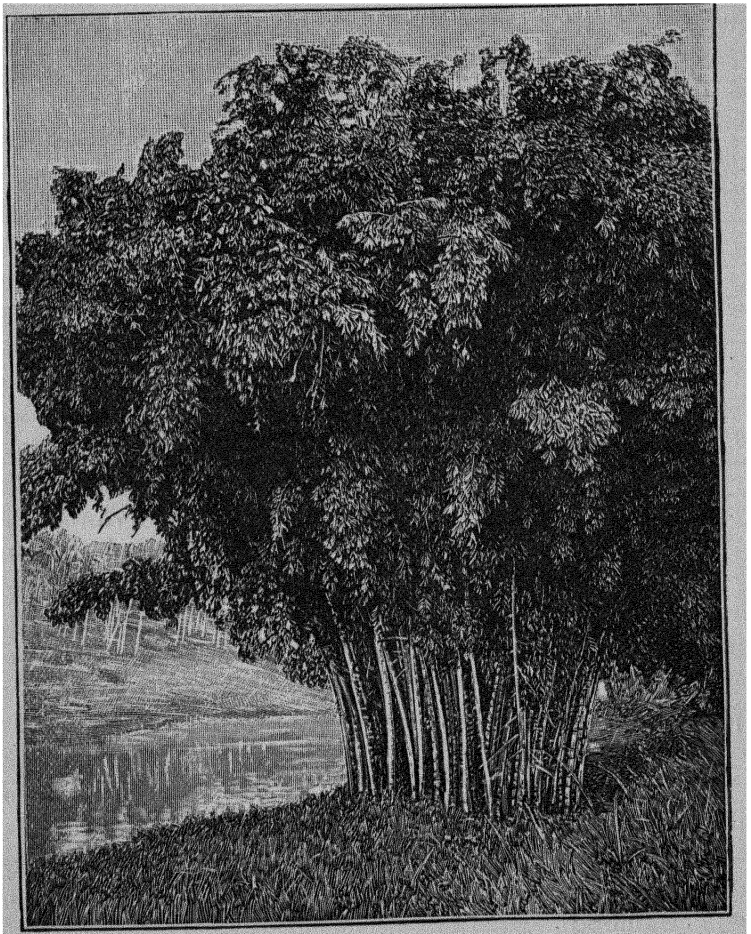


Fig. 110. — A Bamboo Clump.

Millets, cover the larger part of our cultivated areas. Grasses form the extensive meadows spread out over hills and dales; they inhabit the soft swamps as well as the beaten ground of the wayside; they thrive in the cool shade of jungles and on the

scorched heath, on the sandy soil of coast tracts and on the rocky ground of mountains, in the arctic zone under snow and ice as well as in the torrid zone under the parching heat of the sun; they form the extensive tracts known as the Prairies in North America, the Pampas and Llanos in South America, and the Steppes in Europe and Asia: of all the families in the vegetable kingdom the Grasses occupy the largest area of the fertile parts of the world.

34. Order: The Pine Family.

(Coniferæ.)

This order of plants belongs to a series (*Gymnosperms*), quite distinct from the orders we have described heretofore (*Angiosperms*). The distinctive feature of the Gymnosperms is in the seeds, which are not enclosed in an ovary, but are naked. The Conifers are inhabitants of the temperate and cold latitudes. Some of them are successfully planted on the high hills of India, *e.g.*, the Goa Cypress (*Cupressus glauca*).

Woods of Casuarina (*Casuarina equisetifolia*) bear a striking resemblance to the Pine forests of northern regions. The tree does, however, not belong to the Gymnosperms, but to a distinct order (*Casuarineæ*), allied to the Urticaceæ. It is leafless, the branchlets being green and cylindrical with sheaths of scales at the nodes. "The branches, when gently swayed by the wind, give out a sound like that of the sea on a beach, very pleasing to the ears of exiled islanders." The flowers are monœcious. The tree is originally Australian, but now extensively cultivated in many parts of India as a remunerative fuel-tree.

DIVISION II.

FLOWERLESS PLANTS (Cryptogamæ).

These are plants without flowers. They multiply by spores, seed-like cells, that contain no separate germ (*embryo*) like the seeds of the flowering plants (*Phanerogamae*).

The chief orders of this very large division of plants are the Ferns, the Mosses, and the Fungi.

35. Order: The Ferns.

(Filices.)

Most of the Ferns live on shady and moist ground. One of the commonest on the West-Coast of India is the little **Maidenhair Fern** (*Adiantum caudatum*—*Can.* Čēḷukoṇḍi, Ānekivi; *San.* Gajakarna), which we can find on every wall and rock during the monsoon.

1. **Stem.**— The stem of the Maidenhair Fern is a small, creeping root-stock, just on the surface of the soil in which it grows, with a bundle of small, fibrous roots. In the rainless season the plant withers down to its tiny stem in which its life is perpetuated.

2. Its **Leaves** or fronds, as they are called in ferns, are exceedingly *thin and tender*. The plants do not require a thick epidermis on their leaves to lessen the glare of the light or to reduce the action of evaporation; for they grow during the monsoon, when the sun is mostly screened behind clouds and there is always sufficient moisture for their growth, both in the soil and the air.

The tenderness of the leaves, however, involves the danger of their being torn by the wind. This is somewhat removed by the division of the leaves into a number of small segments: the leaves are *pinnate,* and the leaflets become smaller as they get further away from the base of the petiole.

When the leaves grow out of the root-stock, they are *curled,* the very delicate parts of the young leaf-blade being inside and the strong and hairy leaf-stalk outside. When the latter unrolls itself, it first pushes aside the leaf-mould that may lie over it, and then gradually spreads its soft and thin blade to the light. A peculiarity of the fronds of this plant is that they end in a long tail which bends down, seeking the ground, and strikes root to produce a new young plant at its tip (fig. 111).

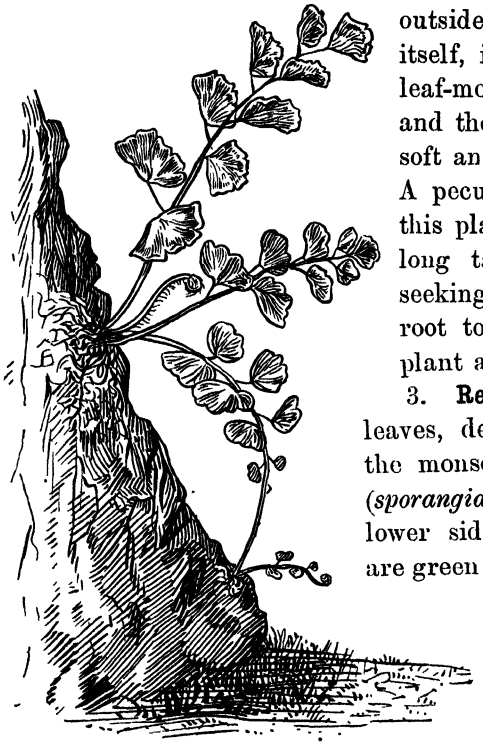


Fig. 111.—Maidenhair Fern (*Adiant umcaudatum*).

3. **Reproductive Organs.**—The leaves, developed at the end of the monsoon, have small growths (*sporangia*) on the margin of the lower side of the leaflets. They are green at first, but soon become brown and then look like withered fringes. These growths contain a fine powder, called *spores* (fig. 112). Until they are ripe, they are covered by scales which are attached by their outer edges to the margin of the leaf. When ripe, the wind shakes the fronds, the spores fall out and are carried far and wide to places at a distance from the mother-plant, where they settle and, under favourable circumstances, *i. e.*, at the beginning of the following monsoon, develop into fresh, little plants, which, however, are quite unlike the mother-plant. For they

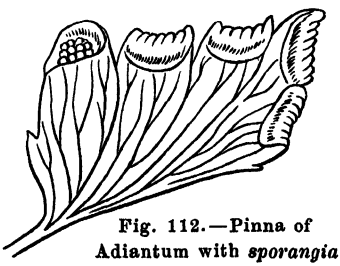


Fig. 112.—Pinna of Adiantum with *sporangia*.

produce no stems and fronds, but have a minute, leaflike body on which the essential organs of reproduction, male and female, grow. It is from the spores resulting from the fertilization of the female organs that the first type of the plant arises.



Fig. 113.—A Group of tropical Ferns.

Ferns, therefore, *pass through two successive states, one of them being a plant of considerable size and consisting of root, stem, and leaves with spores, and the other being very small and developing sexual organs from the seeds of which the first type again grows.*

4. **Distribution.**—This large order of plants is represented in nearly all parts of the earth, but in the tropics, and there especially on islands and coast tracts, they grow with greatest luxuriance (fig. 113).

Much richer in ferns was the earth in ages gone by, when many ferns grew as large as trees, the atmosphere being then much damper and warmer than now. The falling stems of such tree-ferns were floated together by mighty streams, carried away to the sea, and buried under sand and mud. The remains of these plants, thus being shut out from the air, could not rot, but were slowly changed into *coal*. The impressions or casts of leaves and stems of ferns can be distinguished in many pieces of coal even now (see fig. 114).



Fig. 114.— A piece of coal with the impression of a Fern.

36. Order: The Moss Family.

(Musci.)

1. **Their Mode of Living.**— The Mosses live in large groups or colonies and form beautiful, green carpets on moist rocks or on humid and shady ground, and fantastic ornaments on the trunks and branches of trees.

The fronds of the Ferns, as we have seen, are not in a position to live during the dry season. As they are unprotected against dryness, they have to wither and can continue their lives only through spores or through their root-stocks, which bring forth new fronds in the following rainy season. Mosses, however, are so constructed that their leaves simply fold and shrivel up during dry days and recover again after any refreshing shower of rain.

2. **Structure.**— A Moss plant consists of a short *stem,* decaying slowly at its lower end and continually growing at its upper, leafy end. It has no proper roots; but the lower end of the stem is covered with a growth of brown, felt-like hairs (fig. 115), which penetrate the soil and act like root-hairs, absorbing water and food-substances.

The *Leaves* at the upper end of the stem are of small size and simple form. Their arrangement is in a spiral. As they are very numerous and as Moss plants grow together in colonies, the rain water that falls on them is not only absorbed by the leaves in large quantities, but it is also retained in the spaces between single plants and between their leaves and stems.



Fig. 115.—Hair-moss (*Polytrichum communis*).

Leaves and stems, when examined under a microscope, are found to be composed only of cells. They contain no vessels at all. Hence they are termed *Cellular Plants*. Nearly all the plants which we have hitherto noticed consist of cells and vessels, and are, therefore, called *Vascular plants*.

If a group of Mosses, say of Hair-moss (*Polytrichum communis*), is examined, we shall find

(*a*) some specimens with merely a bud, composed of young leaves;

(*b*) other specimens bearing, at their upper end, cup-like rosettes of leaves, which assume a bright reddish colour and protect the minute reproductive organs (fig. 115, to the left);

(*c*) other specimens again bearing at their tips long-stalked spore-capsules, which we shall now study a little closer (fig. 115, to the right).

3. **The Spore-Capsule** (*Sporogonium*).—Both Ferns and Mosses are reproduced by spores. The Ferns, as we have seen, form the spores on the under side of the leaf; the Mosses, however, throw up a stalked, urn-shaped body from the centre of the stem, in which the spores are produced.

This little vessel is protected by a dry, fibrous hood (*calyptra*), like the thatch of a hut (fig. 116, 1). When the spores are ripe, the hood is thrown off. The capsule, shut up by a small, pointed lid (2), now appears and soon places itself horizontally (3). The lid eventually drops also and discloses a pale-grey membrane, attached at its margin to the capsule by a number of tiny teeth (fig. 117). These teeth are very susceptible to moisture. When they get wet, they bend, and while bending press the membrane down, thereby completely shutting up the capsule with the spores. When dry, they stretch themselves upwards and lift the membrane over the brim of the vessel. If the wind then shakes the vessels on their tall, brown stalks, their contents pour out, and a cloud of yellowish or greenish powder is carried away to some spot where a new colony of Mosses will soon spring up.

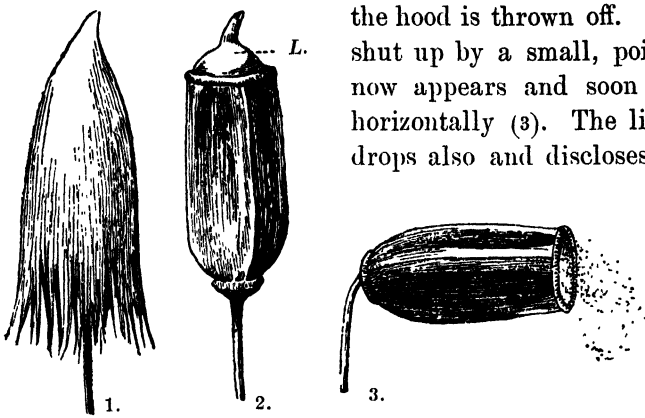


Fig. 116.—Capsule of *Polytrichum* (15 times enlarged).
1. Capsule with hood (*calyptra*); 2. Capsule without it; *L.* Lid.
3. Lid fallen off; the wind sheds the spores.

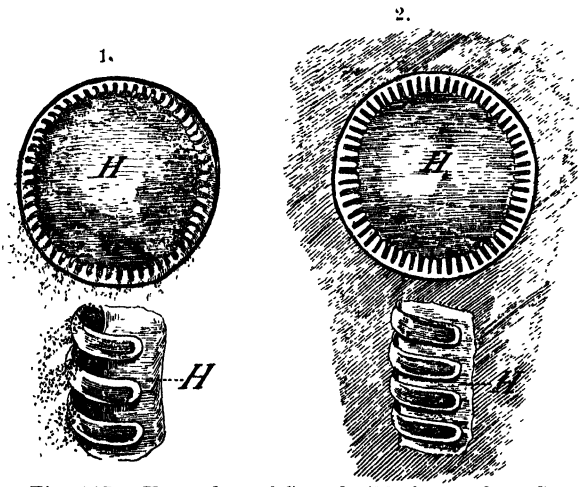


Fig. 117.—Upper face of Capsule (30 times enlarged).
1. When air dry: teeth loose, spores issuing between teeth and membrane (*H*); 2. when damp: teeth tight, holes shut up.

4. **Importance of the Mosses in the Household of Nature.**— Mosses play a very important part in the household of nature. First of all, the Mosses are among the *first settlers* on bare rocks. Being very small plants they content themselves with the smallest amount of earth, collected in the crevices or uneven parts of rocks; the old parts of the Mosses die off, form vegetable mould, and thus continually increase the little amount of humus in which they rooted at first. They thus gradually form a soil in which other, more highly developed plants can grow.

We have seen that Mosses generally grow not as single plants, but in groups, thus forming extensive, soft cushions. These cushions *absorb and retain the rain-water like sponges and give it off very slowly.* Thus the rivers and streams are kept supplied with water throughout the year, and the valleys through which they flow are rendered fertile. Mosses generally live together with trees and are abundantly found in forests, the shade and dampness of which is advantageous to their growth. Inversely they *help to keep the ground from drying up too soon* and thus are useful to the trees which shelter them.

These facts help us to understand why the keeping up of forests is so beneficial to a country. They represent a reservoir of water, which is filled when it rains, and gives the water slowly off to the rivulets and streams, thus watering cultivated lands when there is no rain.

37. Order: The Mushroom and Mould Family. (Fungi.)

The Toadstool or Mushroom (*Agaricus*).

(*Can.* Ā̤limbe, Nāyikoḍe.)

1. **The Toadstool forming the Fructification of a Fungus.**— The Toadstool is a pale, soft substance, reminding one of a diminutive umbrella, with a short, stout stem and a large, horizontal head, at the under-side of which numerous vertical plates, radiating from the stem, can be distinguished. If the head of a

mature Mushroom is laid on a sheet of white paper for a few hours, the paper will be covered with the dark powder of minute spores, produced between the laminated parts of the head. As long as the spores are not mature, those delicate parts are covered and protected from the effects of bad weather by a veil, which later on breaks away from the stem and leaves a ring-like scar on it (fig. 118).

2. **The Mycelium.** — The Mushroom grows from a dense network of white filaments, called the *mycelium*. The latter lives under the soil and grows continually, whereas the mushrooms produced by it here and there are short-lived and perish as soon as they have strewn out their spores. The whole may, therefore, be compared, *e.g.*, to a Mango tree bearing numerous fruits which are dropped when they are ripe. *The mycelium is the fungus proper, and the mushrooms are merely the fructifications. The plant lives under the soil; the fructifications, however, are raised above it in order that the wind may disperse the spores.*



Fig. 118. — The poisonous Toadstool (*Agaricus muscarius*).

3. **Its Mode of Living.** — Like the roots of higher plants the filaments of the mycelium permeate the soil in every direction and draw their food from it. But, as we have seen on different occasions, the roots of plants take up only water and salts. These substances rise into the upper parts of the plant and are there, together with the carbon obtained from the carbonic acid gas of the air, converted into all those substances from which the body of a plant is built up. This work is done by the chlorophyll in the presence of sunlight.

But there is *not the least trace of chlorophyll* in a fungus. The Toadstool is, therefore, obliged to take its food up in a ready-made form; and it finds this in the decaying animal or vegetable matter of the soil in which it grows. It is a *saprophytic plant.*

Mushrooms can, therefore, grow only in places where such decaying matter is found. They do also not require any light

for their growth, like plants with chlorophyll, and hence can be found in the darkest places.

4. **Importance of the Fungi in the Household of Nature.**— As we have already seen, the mushrooms decay very soon and thus convert the animal or vegetable substances on which they grow, into nourishing matter for other plants. They may, therefore, be considered as helps to accelerate the process of decay, and are thus of great service to the animal and vegetable world.

On the other hand many fungi are injurious to man, as they destroy large quantities of agricultural produce, timber, and other substances, when circumstances favour their development. Among these we mention the *Blights* which, as Bunt and Smut, destroy the grain in the ear of Paddy, and the *Moulds* which are so difficult to combat in the monsoon.

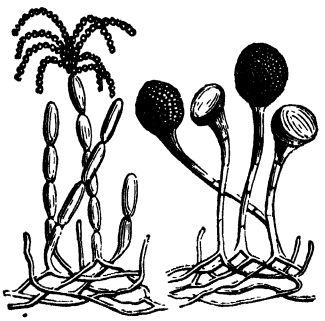


Fig. 119.— Mould with mycelium and fructifications (100 times enlarged).

A sub-division of this great class are

The Bacteria or Fission Fungi

(*Schizomycetes*).

A. **The Structure of the Bacteria.**—

1. These plants are *the smallest organisms* we know of. Many of them are so small that 25000 of them arranged end to end would not measure more than an inch. If examined under the microscope, it is found that each of them is made up of one cell. They assume various shapes: some appear like globules, some like short sticks, others are long and straight, others, again, spirally-wound. They are generally called "bacteria" or "bacilli", words meaning sticks or little rods.

2. Under favourable conditions they *multiply by splitting in two.* And they multiply at such an enormous rate that, if the conditions remained favourable, one such minute thing would in the course of less than 6 days swell to a mass larger in bulk than the earth itself. This is, of course, never possible, for the food they require for their incessant multiplication would soon

fail. But we can see from this example the tremendous rate at which they increase. If the conditions under which they live become unfavourable, they assume a shape that enables them to lie passive until the conditions again become favourable for the continuation of their life.

3. We have seen how small these plants are and can now understand that dry Bacteria can be easily whirled up by the wind and carried away thousands of miles. As invisible dust they are *present everywhere* in the atmosphere, and return to the earth when the air becomes calm.

B. **The Activity of the Bacteria.—**

1. The Bacteria, like all other Fungi, lack chlorophyll; they are, therefore, dependent upon ready-made nourishment, animal or vegetable, which they obtain easiest in *decaying matter.*

(*a*) A simple experiment will, however, soon teach us that they do more than merely feed on decaying matter. We take two glass flasks with a little water, into which we put some animal substance. Then we close both flasks with a loose wad of cotton wool. The contents of one flask we leave undisturbed, but the other one we boil for some time, so that the Bacteria in it may be killed. The Bacteria cannot resist the temperature of boiling water any more than other organisms. After a day or two we shall find the contents of the unboiled flask begin to decay, that in the other one remaining unaltered. But if we remove the stopper from it, so that any Bacteria from the air can enter into it, decay sets in here likewise. This shows that the Bacteria do not only live on decaying substances, but that they are also *the cause of decay.* In other words: *there would be no decay on the earth without the Bacteria.*

(*b*) Suppose the latter were the case: Millions of corpses of animals and plants would cover the earth without decaying. This would result in the destruction of vegetable life, as plants could not find the required food in the soil which is produced by such decay. And in consequence of the destruction of vegetable life also the animals could no longer exist. It is the Bacteria which cause decomposition, and thus are the chief cause of the *eternal cycle of matter in nature.*

(*c*) In this connection we may consider a very important thing referring to agriculture. Each time the crop is removed from a field, a large quantity of nitrogen, deposited chiefly in the seeds, is taken away from the field together with other nourishing elements of the soil. The plants are not able to absorb from the air the nitrogen which they cannot do without. It must, therefore, be restored somehow, and this is done by manuring the field. If, however, fresh manure is used, plants will not grow well, and often die. The albuminoids contained in fresh manure must be rendered soluble in order to be of use to plants. This is done by the Bacteria in the soil by decomposing them. *Manure is thus, by the agency of Bacteria, transformed into such a state that it can be used by the plants as nourishment.*



Fig. 120.—Root-nodules of the Pea plant (natural size). *Z.* Cell of tubercle filled with innumerable Bacteria (120 times enlarged). *B.* Bacteria (800 times enlarged).

(*d*) Plants are, as has been just remarked, not able to take their supply of nitrogen from the air which has such an abundant quantity of it (about 79%); certain Bacteria form, however, an exception. They grow as parasites on the roots of the Leguminosæ and form nodules on them (*cf.* Pea, page 28). These nodules, when squeezed, throw out a sticky fluid which really consists of innumerable Bacteria that can be readily recognized under a powerful microscope. *The Bacteria which form these nodules, are able to derive their nitrogenous food from the air,* which higher vegetation is unable to do. The larger the quantity

of root-nodules, the greater the amount of nourishment derived from the air and stored in the soil. The advantage of growing Pulses, Sunn-Hemp or other Leguminosæ, to recoup the land, is explained by the peculiarity of these plants.

2. Certain other Bacteria produce, in the substances on which they live, a change which is not called decay, but *fermentation* (*cf.* page 18). Again, if toddy or wine is allowed to stand open for a few days, it becomes sour. This is also due to the action of some Bacteria. Similarly it is the Bacteria which turn milk sour, or spoil boiled rice and vegetables. By the action of Bacteria the fibres of Sunn-Hemp (*Crotalaria*) are loosened; and also the peculiar flavour of Cacao and Tobacco is due to the influence of these little organisms which cause fermentation.

3. Plants without chlorophyll find suitable nourishment not only in decaying matter, but also in other *living organisms*. It is no wonder that we should find also numerous *parasites* among the Bacteria. They penetrate the bodies of animals and men, multiply there at a rapid rate, and produce a number of deadly diseases. Of these diseases we shall mention here only these few:—Consumption, of which $\frac{1}{7}$ of all men die; typhoid fever, diphtheria, small-pox, and influenza, which also every year destroy a great number of men in the prime of their life, and cholera and plague, which are the most terrible scourges to which a country can be subjected.

It is right that we should learn to know *how to meet these powerful enemies*. One of the means to keep these "omnipresent" microbes away from us is the greatest *cleanliness*. This holds good of the vessels in which we prepare and preserve our food, of our houses and their surroundings, of our garments, and above all of our own bodies. — As shown in the above experiment, Bacteria perish at the temperature of *boiling water*. This supplies us with a means of keeping good, for some time at least, a number of food substances, such as meat, fruit, vegetables, milk, etc., which would otherwise soon be spoiled. — From immemorial times men have also been using salt to preserve meat and to pickle fruit, sugar to candy them, and smoke to preserve meat. Besides, there are some drugs, called *antiseptics*, which also destroy Bacteria or prevent their action.

SECOND PART.

THE

STRUCTURE AND LIFE OF PLANTS.

DIVISION I.

The Minute Structure and Vital Processes of Plants.

I.—THE SINGLE CELL.

1. The illustration of the vertical section of a leaf, as seen under a microscope, shows that the leaf of a plant does not consist of a homogeneous mass like iron or glass, but consists of

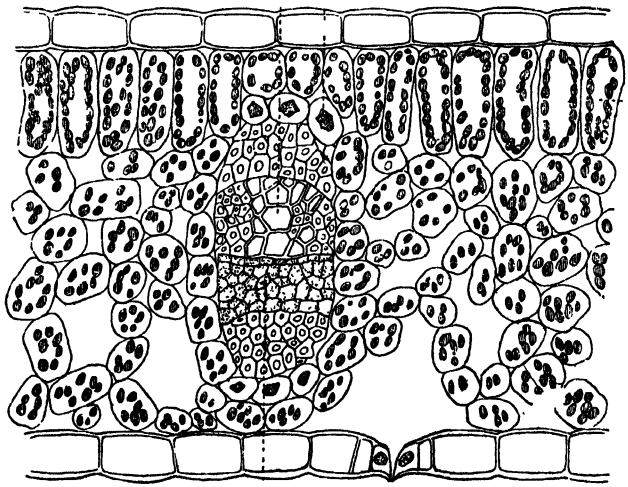


Fig. 121.—Transverse section of a leaf, to show its composition of cells.

several small parts, called **Cells**, which, like the stones of a wall, constitute the whole. Like the leaf, all the other parts of a plant, *viz.*, root, stem, flower and fruit, are composed of cells.

2. Most plants are thus **composed of numerous cells.** But many of the lower classes (*e.g.*, *fungi*) consist of a **single cell** each. These plants are generally very small.

3. The **Size** and **Shape** of the cells vary greatly. In the Bacteria the length of one is less than ·001 cm., in the fibre of Flax and the hair of the Cotton-seed it extends over 4 cm.

4. In some cases a number of cells standing one over the other in a row have the partitions which separate them removed, and thus form a tube or a **Vessel,** open all through. — *Plants, then, are built up of cells, or of cells and vessels, the latter originating from cells.*

5. The cell consists of a cell-wall and the cell contents, which when young is called **Protoplasm.** This is a viscid, nitrogenous substance, capable of absorbing moisture, of expanding, of forming fresh cells by division, and of motion: it is *endowed with life.* The cells are the workshops in which all the secret and wonderful operations of the plant-life are carried on.

6. By the activity of the protoplasm certain substances are produced, which are of great importance for the life of the plant. Some of these are green granules, called **Chlorophyll,** which give the plants their green hue. The chlorophyll-granules have the power of forming starch under the action of sunlight out of carbonic acid gas and water absorbed by the plant.

7. Besides, the cells contain a fluid, called the **Cell-Sap,** in which acids (Citron!), salt, sugar, and other substances are dissolved. This sap rises from cell to cell permeating through the cell-walls from the root to the top of the tree. The protoplasm forms various substances out of the cell-sap, which together with the starch are either passed along to any point of activity where their presence is necessary for the growth of the plant; or they are stored up in the tissues of the plant for future use. In this way oily and fatty matters, and grains of albuminoids are formed and stored.

2.—THE ORGANIC STRUCTURE.

1. Plants which consist of a *single cell*, like the Bacteria, can be compared to single men who live for themselves and have to do everything alone, such as the gathering of food, the building of houses to live in, the defending against enemies and so on. So single cells have to do all the functions essential for life: they have to absorb their food, to build up their structure, to guard against adverse circumstances, and to reproduce their kind.

2. Plants consisting of *various cells*, however, are like a state, in which the different labours conducing to the welfare of the community are divided. As in the state certain individuals are occupied in obtaining food for all (farmers), others in supplying the public with houses und clothes (craftsmen), others in the distribution and circulation of food and articles (merchants), and others in the maintenance of order and in the defence of the common-weal (soldiers), so the various cells of a plant are assigned different functions and form a well-organised state.

3. They are also specially fitted for their several special purposes, and groups of them thus form *organs* for the vital operations of the plant.

These organs are not equally developed in all plants. Some have a higher, and some a lower organisation. We shall now study the various organs of the plant, as we find them in their leaves, roots, stems, flowers, and fruits.

DIVISION II.

The Structure and Vital Processes of the Parts of Plants.

I.—THE LEAF.

A. The Outer Structure.

1. **The Parts of a Leaf.**—The chief parts of a leaf are

(*a*) the **stalk** or **petiole** which supports the leaf, and

(*b*) the **blade,** which provides a large surface exposed to the action of light and air so as to enable the plant to evaporate its water and to gather as much carbonic acid gas as possible.

The stalk helps to place the leaf always in a position to get a large share of sunlight and air (*cf.* Cucumber, page 45; Sun-flower, page 52); it also prevents the blade being torn by the wind or by raindrops (*cf.* Mango, page 20). Some leaves have no petioles, *e.g.*, Ixora; they are then called "*sessile*". Many plants have *sheathed* stalks surrounding the stem, as for instance, the Grasses (*cf.* Rice, page 128). The petiole is attached either to the bottom of the blade, as in most plants, or in the centre of it, as in the Castor-oil plant, and in this case it is called "*peltate*".

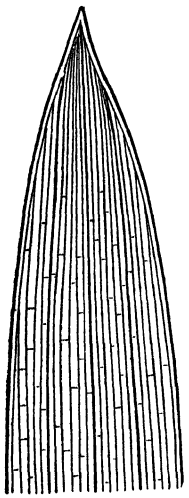


Fig. 122.—Tip of a Grass blade with parallel veins (4 times enlarged).

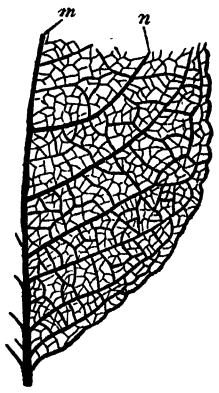


Fig. 123.—Piece of the leaf of a dicotyledonous tree with reticulated veins (reduced).

2. The Blades of Leaves exhibit various **Characteristics:**—

(*a*) As to the **arrangement of the ribs** or veins. If we examine the leaves of Grasses, or Lilies, we shall find that the veins run

parallel to one another in one direction from the stalk to the tip. The venation of such leaves is said to be *parallel.* The veins in

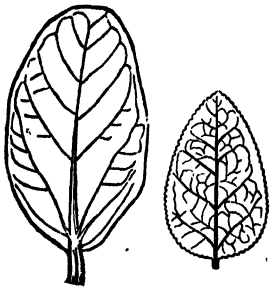


Fig. 124.—Ovate leaves.

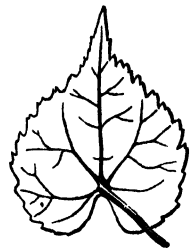


Fig. 125.—Cordate leaf.

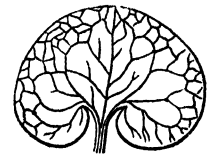


Fig. 126.—Reniform leaf.



Fig. 127. Oblong leaf.



Fig. 128. Lanceolate leaf.

most dicotyledons, such as the Teak and Banyan, form a kind of network; they are called *net-veined* (reticulated).

(*b*) As to **form.** Some are egg-shaped or *ovate* (Banyan, Pepper); some heart-shaped or *cordate* (Betel, Portia tree); some kidney-shaped or *reniform* (Hydrocotyle — *Can.* Ondelaga); some long and narrow or *oblong* (Mango); some shaped like the head of a lance or *lanceolate* (Leucas — *Can.* Tumbe); and some needle-shaped or *linear* (Asparagus — *Can.* Halavumakkaḷatāyi).



Fig. 129.—Margin of leaves: 1. Dentate (toothed); 2. serrate; 3. crenate; 4. sinuate; 5. pinnatifid; 6. bipinnatifid; 7. digitately lobate.

(*c*) As to their **margin,** whether *entire* (Jack); or *toothed,* with teeth pointing outwards (Sea-holly); or *serrate,* with teeth

like a saw pointing upwards (Rose); or *crenate,* with rounded teeth (Ageratum—*Can.* Ūrāḷagiḍa); or *sinuate,* if the edge is not toothed, but has broad and shallow depressions (Papaw tree); or *pinnatifid,* if the leaf is cut half-way down and the divisions are narrow and acute; or *bipinnatifid;* or *digitately lobate* (Castor-oil plant).

(*d*) As to **division,** whether simple (Jack, Banyan), or compound, that is, formed of separate pieces (Rose, Tamarind).

(*e*) If compound, whether the leaflets are *trifoliate* (Bean); or *digitate,* that is, spread out like fingers (Silk-cotton); or *pinnate,* with a terminal leaflet (Rose, Indigo), or none (Pea); or *bipinnate,* when the divisions of pinnate leaves are themselves pinnate again (Peacock's Pride, Acacia).



Fig. 130.—Insertion of leaves: 1. alternate; 2. decussate; 3. whorled.

3. The **Insertion of the Leaves in the Stem** is such as to prevent any interference with one another, and thus to allow free access of both light and air. They are either *alternate* (Custard Apple), or *opposite* when the leaves are in pairs all up the stem, one on each side of it; or *decussate* when each pair of opposite leaves

is at right angles to the next pair (*Labiatæ, Verbenaceæ*); or *whorled* (Alstonia,—*Can.* Hālēmara). If we repeat the experiment with the thread, described on page 51, we shall see that those seemingly irregular leaves are inserted in the stem in *spirals*. With the help of the thread it is also easy to find out how many turns are necessary to get to a leaf which is exactly above the first, and which of the number of leaves it is. Thus we count 5 leaves on 2 turns in the case of the Jack tree, or in the Shoe-flower; each leaf takes therefore $\frac{2}{5}$ of a turn. The arrangement of leaves is in this case denoted by the fraction $\frac{2}{5}$. Grasses and Lilies have their leaves generally in the $\frac{1}{2}$ position; other common positions are those represented by the fractions $\frac{1}{3}$ and $\frac{3}{8}$.

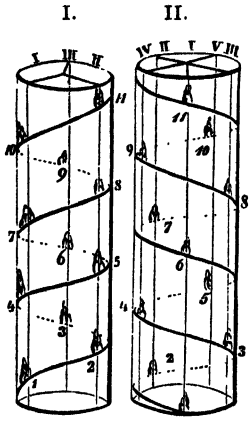


Fig. 131.— Spiral insertion of leaves. Each leaf takes $\frac{1}{3}$ of a turn in I, and $\frac{3}{8}$ in II.

B. The Work done by the Leaf.

1. Transpiration or Evaporation of Water.

(*a*) **The Fact that Plants evaporate Water** can be proved by an experiment. Place some fresh twigs of a plant under a bell-jar in the sunshine. After a short time we shall find a deposit of moisture on the inner side of the glass. Another bell-jar with no plants under it, similarly placed in the sunshine, has no such deposit of moisture. From this we draw the conclusion that plants transpire or evaporate water in the form of water-vapour.

(*b*) **How can this Transpiration take place?**—A careful examination of the surface of leaves shows that there are many tiny openings which, looked at through a microscope (fig. 132), appear like little mouths, and are therefore called *stomata* (from the Greek *stoma,* meaning mouth). Some leaves have them on both sides, but most only on the under side. (The Lotus plant cannot but have them only on the upper side. Why? Compare page 3.)

These openings lead to hollow spaces, called *air-chambers* in the interior of the leaves (see fig. 121 on page 148). The stomata are the "gates" of these cavities, through which a great deal of the water in the plant escapes as vapour. In a lesser degree transpiration also takes place through the walls of the cells of the outer skin, called *epidermis*.

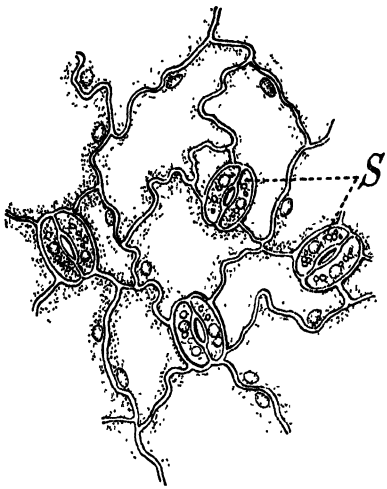


Fig. 132.—Part of the surface of a leaf. S. Stoma (200 times enlarged).

(*c*) **Importance of Transpiration.** — This process is of the greatest importance to the life of the plant. It is generally known that plants suck up water and mineral food dissolved in water by means of their roots. This liquid food is carried up through the stem and the branches to the leaves, where, as we shall see later on, certain materials are formed which the plant requires for its growth. All the water that comes up is not required for this purpose. When it has done its work as carrier of the mineral food from the soil to the leaves, it is passed off as vapour, making room for further supplies from the soil. The transpiration of water from the leaves thus *acts like a suction pump: it is always drawing up fresh supplies of water and food from the roots.*

(*d*) **Amount of Transpiration.** — We can ascertain the quantity of water evaporated by a certain plant in a given time, by means of a simple experiment. We put the stem of a twig with leaves into a tumbler of water, cover the surface of the water with a coat of oil and place the whole on a balance. After a few hours we shall notice a considerable loss of weight, due only to the evaporation of water through the leaves of the plant. Thus it was found out that, for instance, a Sunflower plant gives off a quart of fluid in 24 hours, and a Teak tree many gallons in the same time. A piece of land covered with trees brings an

enormous amount of water up from the depth of the earth to the atmosphere. From this we may now easily understand, how important woods are for the fertility of a country, and how disastrous it is to destroy forests. In each plant an invisible stream of water arises, as it were, from the ground to pour into the ocean of the atmosphere to come down again to the earth as rain.

The amount of evaporation varies with certain circumstances. In the first place, it depends on the temperature: the warmer the air is and the hotter the leaves become under the rays of the sun, the more rapid will be the action of transpiration. Secondly, when winds blow and carry away the air round the leaves which is saturated with vapour, bringing dry and thirsty air ready to take in vapour from the leaves, the amount of evaporation will naturally be greater than when there is no wind. Thirdly, clothes dry much more slowly during the monsoon than when the dry land-winds blow. For the same reason plants will evaporate much more water in dry weather than in the monsoon.

(*e*) **Helps to promote Transpiration.**—As the evaporation of water through the pores of the leaves is of such great importance to the plants, we find many arrangements in the plant-world by which this process is enhanced when likely to prove useful to the plant.

Plants that grow on shady and moist places have *large leaves,* as a rule, and generally very numerous stomata. Their leaves are, besides, very tender, that is to say, their *epidermis is so thin that water can pass* not only through the pores (stomata), but also *through the walls of the surface cells.*

We can sometimes see dark spots or blotches on the leaves of some plants, such as some Aroideæ or Turmeric. *By virtue of* these *dark-coloured spots the leaves are enabled to absorb more heat* than if they were green throughout. (A dark coat feels warmer than a bright one.) Similarly, the leaves of the Lotus plant are coloured dark-purple on their under-side.

Many plants, like the Bean and almost all Leguminosæ, have the curious habit of *folding their leaves at night.* This, again, is an ingenious device to prevent dew from covering them and thus choking the pores, so that the action of transpiration may not suffer (see page 33).

Other plants, like the Opium Poppy and the Lotus, possess a *bloomy coat of a waxy substance* on their leaves so that they are not wetted, and the process of evaporation may not be interrupted.



Fig. 133. — Kinds of Cactus whose leaves are reduced to spines.

(*f*) **Means to check too much Transpiration.** — Too much transpiration, *i. e.*, too great a loss of water is, on the other hand, dangerous for the life of a plant. Plants, which have to live on very dry soil, or are exposed to the scorching heat of the sun or to the parching influence of dry winds, or which for many months must do without a drop of rain, must needs have some means of reducing the action of transpiration.

Above all, we notice that the leaves of such plants have a very *limited surface* (*cf.* Leucas, page 75; Asparagus, page 112), and are sometimes reduced to mere spines or scales (Cactus, page 42; Casuarina, page 135). Some plants drop their leaves entirely during the dry season (Teak, page 80) to prevent loss of moisture by evaporation.

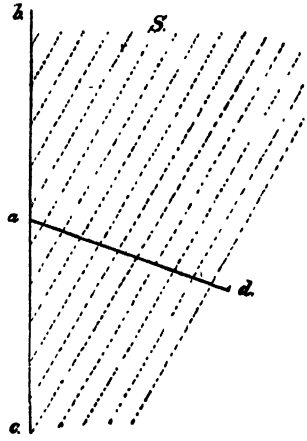


Fig. 134. — Solar rays striking the line *a d* at right angles and heating it much more than the lines *a b* or *a c* which lie more in the direction of the sun's rays.

Another kind of protection from the scorching heat of the sun is the *vertical position* of leaves, as is seen in many trees of Australia, of which the Eucalyptus tree is one. Instead of holding their leaves flatly or horizontally, as trees generally do so as to catch every ray of sunlight, they avoid the heat as much

as possible by holding them edgeways to the light. Similarly some other plants, like Oxalis (*Can.* Puḷḷampuṇise; *Mal.* Puḷiyāral; *San.* Čukrikā) fold their leaves at midday when the sun shines hottest.

Various plants that live on dry and rocky soil, store up in their *fleshy stems and leaves* every drop of water they can get when rain falls, and live sparingly on it during the long periods of drought which may last for three-quarters of the year. Such plants are the Bryophyllum (*Can.* Kāḍu-basaḷe), the Agave (*Can.* Ānekattāḷi), and many Spurges and Cactuses. A number of Orchids make the same provision for long periods of drought in using their enlarged stems or pseudo-bulbs as storehouses of nutriment and water, upon which the plants feed in times of need.

And not only are these plants thus enabled to store up water against the time of drought, they also keep this precious fluid under a *thick, leathery skin,* through which only very little moisture can escape.

Another very common means of protection against too great a loss of moisture by transpiration is the *hairy covering* of their leaves. The hairs keep a layer of quiet air within their spaces and thus prevent the access of new, unsaturated air which would dry up the leaves in a short time.

Many leaves also are *shiny* and reflect a great deal of the heat which would otherwise raise their temperature and so increase the activity of evaporation (*cf.* Mango, page 21).

And last but not least, most plants have the wonderful power of *closing their stomata* as soon as the amount of water coming up from the roots becomes scarce.

2. Assimilation of Food.

(*a*) **Absorption of Carbonic Acid.** – So far, we have seen, plants suck up moisture from the soil by means of their roots, and, with this moisture, certain elements in solution, and that this liquid food is carried up through their stems and branches into their leaves.

The greater part of the food, however, is not absorbed by the roots, but by the leaves from the air. This is obtained from a

gas, called *carbonic acid gas,* consisting partly of carbon and partly of oxygen. The plants need carbon for their structure, for we know that the greater part of the plants consists of carbon (charcoal is carbon). The leaves absorb the gas that contains this food from the air, and because there is so little of it, each tree needs to spread out an immense amount of foliage, so that it may drink in all the carbonic acid gas that can possibly be obtained.

That they do this, we shall learn from a simple experiment. Take a bunch of fresh green leaves of a water-plant, say Utricularia, and place it under a funnel in a vessel filled with fresh spring water. Over the mouth of the funnel place a test-tube filled with water. Then expose the apparatus to strong sunlight. After a very short time you will see bubbles arise from the leaves, which are collected at the top of the test-tube, as is shown in the figure. When all the water in the test-tube has been displaced, we shall close it with the thumb, take it out and introduce a glowing chip, which will at once burn very actively: the tube contained oxygen gas. This gas was evolved by the leaves under the water. They absorbed the carbonic acid gas, dissolved in fresh spring water, and retained only the carbon of it, setting free the oxygen.

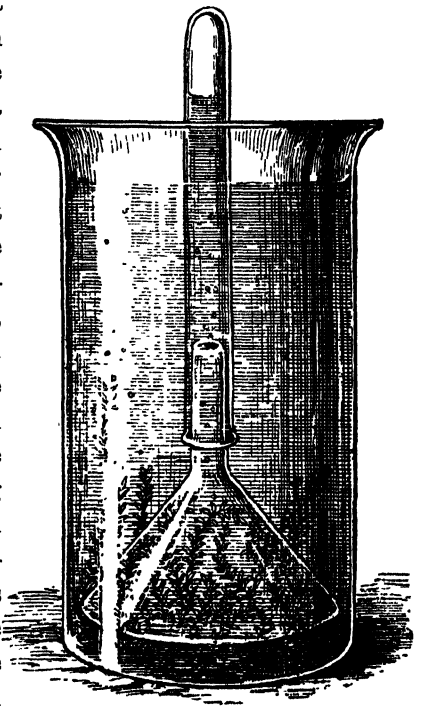


Fig. 135.—Absorption of carbonic acid gas and setting free of oxygen by a water-plant.

That this explanation is correct, *i.e.,* that the oxygen set free is derived from the decomposition of the carbonic acid gas and not from the water, may be proved by continuing our experiment.

The evolution of oxygen gas will become less and less until it ceases altogether. This can only be due to the exhaustion of carbonic acid in the water.

We know now that *plants possess the power of absorbing carbonic acid gas through their leaves and of deriving from this gas the carbon which they require for the construction of their body.*

(*b*) **Only the Green Parts of Plants absorb Carbonic Acid.**— It must, however, be borne in mind that not all plants have the power of thus feeding on the carbonic acid gas in the air. It is only the *green plants* (name plants that are not green!) and only the *green parts* of these that can feed on the carbonic acid gas in the air. If we repeat the above experiment with a potato tuber, no oxygen will be given off. The green leaves are, therefore, the most important organs of nourishing the plants. Plants which are repeatedly robbed of their leaves, as for instance by the ravages of caterpillars, become sickly and die.

(*c*) **The Presence of Sunshine is required.**—The green parts of plants can absorb carbon only under certain circumstances. *They require sunshine for their action.* If we place the apparatus of the experiment, described above, in a dark place, there will be no formation of bubbles, and there can, therefore, be no absorption of carbon. At night also this process cannot take place.

The fact that plants require light for their life, explains numerous features of the structure of plants: The green parts of the plants are placed in the light; stems and branches, the supports of the green leaves, rise above the ground; creepers bring their leaves from the shade below to the life-giving light above; many jungle plants that would not get sufficient light on the dark-shaded ground have assumed the habit of perching on the branches of trees where they have a chance of getting more light; the leaves themselves are generally dark-green on their upper surface and whitish on the lower one; the insertion of the leaves in the stem is always such that all of them get their due share of light; those placed at the base of a stem are in many cases larger, long-petioled and flatly exposed to the light, those above, small and pressed towards the stem (Mustard, Ladies'-finger); if the stem is weak and straggling (Cucumber, page 45), the petioles,

by twisting and bending themselves, assume such a position as to place every leaf in the light; and large leaves are often divided into smaller parts so as to let the light pass through their holes to any leaves that grow below them.

(*d*) **The Inner Structure of the Leaf: Chlorophyll and Assimilation.**—In order to better understand the manner in which leaves absorb their food, we must examine the *inner structure* of them. The illustration given here shows the vertical section of a leaf as seen in a microscope. The upper and under surfaces are formed by flat cells with thick walls. This is the outer skin or *epidermis* (*a*). Between the 2 skins there is a layer, more or less

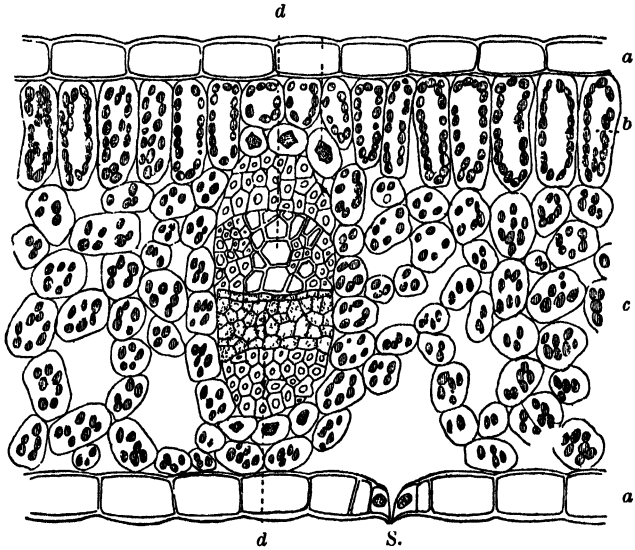


Fig. 186.—Vertical section of a leaf (320 times enlarged).
a. Epidermis. *b*. Palisade tissue. *c*. Spongy tissue.
d. A vein or rib. *S*. Stoma.

thick, of soft and green tissue, the upper part of which consists of oblong cells, arranged at right angles to the surface, and placed so evenly parallel to each other that they have been compared to the pales of a fence. They are called *palisade tissue* (*b*). Below the palisade tissue is another of quite a different form, consisting of cells that are not so closely packed, but have large air-spaces between them, like a sponge. They form the *spongy*

tissue (*c*). The illustration also shows a bundle of other cells in the middle (*d*). These constitute a vein running through, and supporting, the blade of the leaf. In the cells of the palisade and spongy tissues we can see a number of small, dark spots. These denote the *chlorophyll-granules* that give the leaves their green colour. The palisade tissue contains a much greater quantity of them, and this is the reason why leaves are generally dark-green on the upper, and light-green on the under surface. It is in these green granules that the all-important work is done of decomposing the carbonic acid gas into its constituents, carbon and oxygen, and of forming new substances. This process is called *assimilation.* To allow the air to reach the inner parts of the leaf there are the *stomata* (*S.*) on the under surface of the leaf, which lead into the spaces between the cells of the spongy tissue. And as the walls of the cells, in which the chemical changes are going on, are exceedingly thin, they require protection. This is afforded by the epidermis, which in many cases becomes nearly as tough and strong as leather.—The chlorophyll is a very delicate substance. Exposed to the sun it is soon discoloured and loses its properties; the plant has, therefore, constantly to replace that part of it which is used up and spoiled. If the amount of the destroyed chlorophyll is greater than that which the plant is able to supply anew, the plant becomes sickly and dies. So the chlorophyll of young shoots is in many cases protected by the presence of a red dye in the cells; this absorbs the light and thus weakens its destructive power (*cf.* Rose, Cinnamon, Banyan). The intensity of light is also otherwise lessened, for instance, by a coat of hairs which acts like a curtain, or by the mirror-like surface of many leaves which throws back a part of the light rays.

(*e*) **The Substances formed by "Assimilation".**—The products of the process of assimilation, that is of converting the raw food from the soil and the air into material necessary for building up new tissue in the plant, are chiefly two, namely starch and albumen. Of these the more important is *starch,* a compound of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. This substance abounds within the cells of many parts of various plants, as in the potato and

all cereal grains, and is also the principal constituent of arrow-root and sago. The importance of this substance for the life of the plant is duly understood when we learn that the plants need it for the construction of the cell-walls of all their parts. Even *albumen,* of which the life-substance of the plant, the protoplasm (see page 149), consists, can only be formed of starch together with other mineral substances obtained from the soil, among which nitrogen is the chief substance. Other organic products formed in the cells, the little laboratories of the plants, are *sugar,* found abundantly in Sugarcane and all sweet fruits, *oils* and *fats,* common in seeds and fruits (Castor-oil, Gingelly), *alkaloids* with either medicinal, or poisonous, or stimulating properties (Coffee, Tea), and *acids* (Citron, and many fruits).

The products prepared in the cells of the leaves, are then carried through the ribs and the stalk of the leaf and through the stem to wherever their presence is required. They are also stored up in the stem, in tubers, in bulbs, in roots, or in the seeds, as a reserve of material for future use.

3. Respiration or Breathing.

(*a*) **Proof of the Fact that Plants breathe Oxygen.**— Plants, like animals, absorb oxygen giving off carbonic acid gas, which process is known as respiration or breathing. This cannot usually be observed at the time when the process of assimilation takes place. It is, however, very evident in parts that are not green and in all parts at night. Take, for instance, two narrow-necked glass bottles of equal size and fill one of them one-third with germinating seeds of Bengal gram or flower-buds. After about a day insert a lighted taper. In the empty bottle the taper will go out after it has burnt a little while, *i.e.,* until the oxygen contained in the bottle is used up by the burning taper. In the other one the taper goes out at once, showing that there is no oxygen in the bottle. The latter must have been absorbed by the growing seeds which gave off carbonic acid instead.

(*b*) **Necessity of Breathing.**— The oxygen thus obtained by the plant is required for the various chemical processes carried

on in its body to maintain its life and to grow. It is, therefore, evident that plants must breathe at all times and in all their parts which contain living cells, *i.e.*, in their leaves, stems, roots, flowers, and seeds.

In the green parts the action of breathing at day cannot be shown as they assimilate under the influence of sunlight more vigorously than they breathe. They rather appear to exhale oxygen. We have, therefore, to strictly *distinguish between Assimilation and Respiration. While in the process of assimilation green plants alone, and only in the light, decompose carbonic acid and give off oxygen,* all *plant organs without exception both by day and by night take up oxygen and give off carbonic acid.*

If plants or parts of them are deprived of oxygen and the action of respiration is thus checked, they are hindered in their growth, become sickly, or perish. This can often be noticed in pot-plants or fruit-trees which are planted too deeply and covered with too much earth. Their roots cannot get the required air for breathing. Conversely the loosening of the upper crust of soil is advantageous to crops to allow the air free access to the roots.

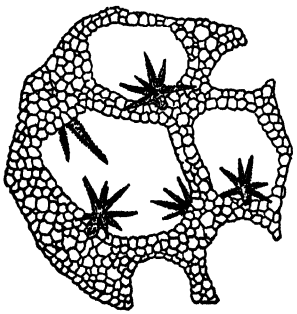


Fig. 137.—Large air-chambers in the leaf-stalk of the Water Lily forming air-canals from the leaf-blades to the root.

(*c*) **Ways for Breathing.**—The entrance of oxygen into the plant body is accomplished in the same way as that of carbonic acid for assimilation. It enters through the stomata of leaves into the air-chambers inside and is distributed in the tissues in all directions, penetrating into the protoplasm of the inner cells. Stems and stalks that are covered with bark also have their openings, called cortical pores, by which the free passage of gases is secured. (Examine the bark of a Shoeflower plant.)

In marsh and water plants, which stand partially in the air, intercellular air-spaces are extensively developed and form connecting canals (compare the leaf-stalks of the Water Lily through

which the atmospheric oxygen can reach the organs growing deep in the swampy soil which are cut off from any communication with the atmosphere.

2.—THE ROOT.

We have seen that the plant derives its food partly from the air and partly from the soil. One part of the plant, therefore, rises above the ground; the other grows downwards, and this part is called the root.

1. The chief **Uses** of the roots for the life of the plant are the following:—

(*a*) they fix the plant in the earth, and

(*b*) they suck up moisture as food and drink for the plant.

2. The **Structure** of the roots is in full harmony with these functions.

(*a*) **Tap-Roots and Side-Roots.**— To anchor the stem firmly in the ground there is not only a *main* or *tap-root*, which in continuation of the stem grows vertically down, but there are also numerous *side-roots*.

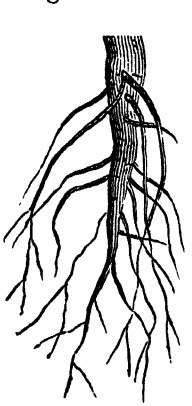


Fig. 138.— Main root with side-roots of Thorn-apple.

The *size* of the root is generally in proportion to the size of the plant, as a large tree necessarily requires a stronger hold in the ground than a small herb. "The astonishing strength of tree-roots can be imagined when we watch a tree in full leaf during a storm. As the terrific force of the gale sways the trunk to and fro, the roots are subjected to an enormous strain. Like great India-rubber cables, they give and retract, and when the wind subsides, we find the trunk as firm as ever." (*Brightwen.*)

(*b*) **Root-hairs.**— For the purpose of absorbing the food, which must always be in a liquid form, the rootlets or little side-roots are covered with fine *root-hairs* (fig. 139), which are really the active part of the root, for it is only through these hairs that the rootlets can absorb the liquid from the soil.

Common earth consists of small particles of mineral substances, such as clay, lime, or iron, and also of such vegetable matter as decayed leaves and rotten wood. The spaces between the particles are more or less filled with air, each mineral particle being enveloped within a film of water which it absorbs from the atmosphere or obtains from the rain-water passing from the

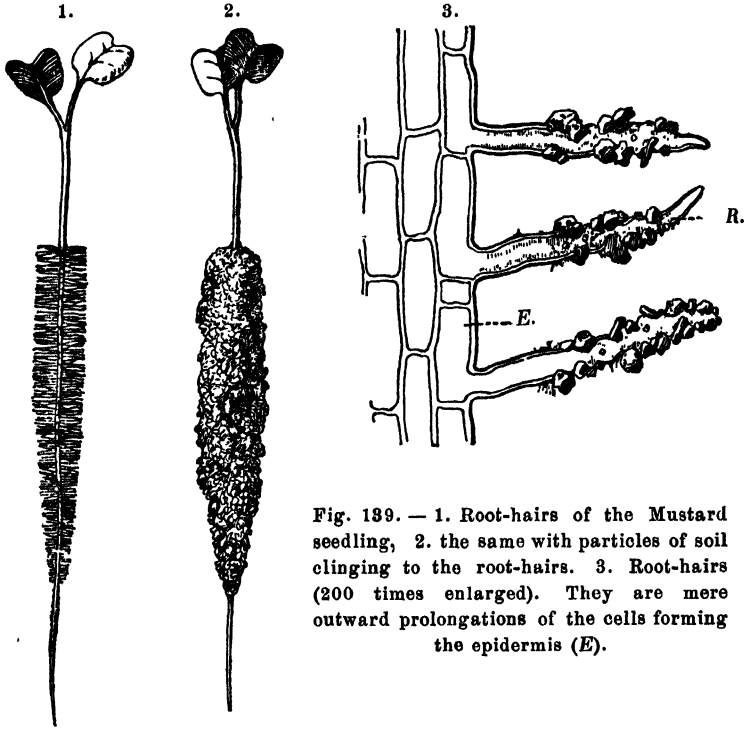


Fig. 139. — 1. Root-hairs of the Mustard seedling, 2. the same with particles of soil clinging to the root-hairs. 3. Root-hairs (200 times enlarged). They are mere outward prolongations of the cells forming the epidermis (*E*).

surface to the subsoil. It has been ascertained that the root-hairs which penetrate into the smallest crevices of the earth feed only on this delicate water-film which contains mineral substances in solution. And the air in the soil greatly helps towards the oxydization and dissolution of the minerals. For this reason the breaking up of the ground by spade, plough, etc., plays such an important part in agriculture and horticulture. We can now understand also why stagnant water in the ground is so injurious to plant-life. It prevents the needful air from

coming into contact with the roots. This is the reason why farmers are careful to remove the surplus water from their fields by drainage and canalisation.

(*c*) **Growth of Roots.** — The roots constantly *grow* so as to reach parts of the soil from which they have not yet drawn food. While pushing their way through the hard soil their tips get worn out. They are, therefore, not only protected at their ends by small *caps,* but these covers are also constantly renewed. The older parts of the root have no root-hairs (why?), but form a protective covering of bark, like the stems.

(*d*) **Manuring and Rotation of Crops.** — Farmers who year after year try to grow, on the same field, plants which can feed only on the uppermost layer of earth, must take pains to *manure* the ground after they have taken the crop. For, with the crop they remove also many elements of food from the soil, so that the soil becomes poorer and poorer in the materials available for plant-growth, and the crops gradually deteriorate. But as some plants require more or less of a particular element than others, and also strike their roots more or less deep in the ground, the farmer can *rotate* his crops, that is to say, if Paddy and Pulses, for instance, are grown in a certain field one year, they are followed up the next year by Sugarcane, and so on, coming back again to Paddy eventually.

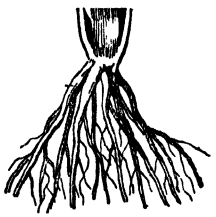


Fig. 140. — Fibrous Roots.



Fig. 141. Swollen Tap-root of Radish.

3. **Peculiar Kinds of Roots.** — (*a*) **Fibrous Roots.**—Grasses and most of the monocotyledons have a number of similar thread-like roots, among which a main or tap-root cannot be distinguished. Such roots are called fibrous. They are particularly fit to bind earth and sand together to clods, and this tendency of fibrous roots is taken advantage of in the construction of railway embankments by planting grass on the slopes.

(*b*) **Thickened Tap-Roots.**—Some tap-roots swell and become a storing place for food material, like the thickened root of the Radish or of the Four-o'clock plant. In some cases the same thing happens also with side-roots, as in the Dahlia, or in Wild Asparagus (*Can.* Halavumakkaḷatāyi).

(*c*) **Adventitious Roots.**—Roots may also be thrown out by the stems of plants, and are then called adventitious, *i. e.*, accidental or out of the ordinary course, as they are not formed from the original root or portion of it. We can find such roots on the stem of the Pepper vine (page 96), which climbs up with their help; they form the supports of the long, horizontal branches of the Banyan tree, and afford the Mangrove trees (*Rhizophora mucronata*, and others) a better hold in the swamps in which they grow.

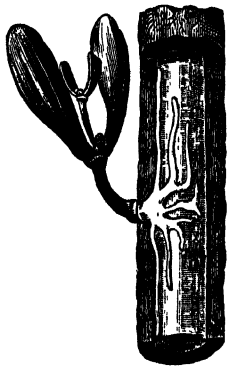


Fig. 142.—Parasitical Root of Mistletoe.

Advantage is taken of this power of forming roots out of the stem in multiplying plants by cuttings.

(*d*) **Air-Roots.**—These absorb the watery vapour of the air and hang down from perching plants, such as some Orchids. A kind of Mangrove (*Sonneratia acida*) throws up air-roots above the water-level, which contain large spaces to enable the roots to get sufficient air to breathe.

(*e*) **Parasitical Roots** penetrate into the stems and roots of other plants, instead of drawing their nourishment from the ground.

3.—THE STEM.

The work of the stem may be said to be threefold. It has

1. to support the branches and leaves, and to spread them out to the air and the sun;

2. to carry the sap from the roots up to all parts of the plant, and to bring the starch formed in the green parts of the plant down to the points where growth takes place;

3. to serve as a food-store for the use of the plant in future.

1. Stems as Means to spread out the Leaves and Flowers to the Air and the Sun.

We have learned that the inner cells of leaves are the workshops wherein the plant prepares materials for the construction of its body. But as this can only be done under the influence of sunlight, and also as carbon can only be taken from the air, it follows that the leaves must be freely spread out to the sunlight and to the air. The same is also necessary for the flowers in order that they may be fertilized by insects or by the agency of the wind so as to produce fruit. *Stems,* therefore, *rise up,* and, in many cases, form branches on which they can support a great number of leaves and flowers.

The greater the load of leaves, flowers and fruit which a stem has to bear, the stronger must also be its structure. Comparatively small plants of a short duration of life, the so-called *herbs,* which are either annuals or biennials, thus have a weak, soft, green stem, divided into nodes and internodes. The nodes are the points from which leaves arise, and are often swollen as in Grasses. The internodes are the intervening portions of the stem. They are generally hollow in Grasses, the nodes being solid. *Perennial herbs* have stems which flower and perish annually; but the underground portion of their stems remains alive for an indefinite period.

If the stem of a plant does not die down at the end of a season, but lasts for years, it becomes woody. If the woody stem of such a plant branches off from the ground, it is called a *shrub*; if it has a distinct woody trunk, scarcely branching from the base and of considerable size, we call it a *tree.*

Some stems, whether herbaceous or woody, are so thin and weak that they cannot stand erect. They are either *prostrate* or assume the habit of *clinging to other bodies.* There are various methods by which plants can do this:

(*a*) by means of rootlets (Pepper);

(*b*) by means of tendrils (Pea, Cucumber, and others);

(*c*) by twining round other plants or supports, like the Bean; some wind to the right (Hop), some to the left (Bean); but even if

unwound and turned the other way, the young parts will insist on following their original winding;

(*d*) by means of hooks or spines, like the Rose or the Wild Asparagus.

2. Stems as Channels for the Ascending and the Descending Sap.

If we cut a young twig of a tree, we can see drops of its sap ooze out from the wound. If a branch or the stem of a tree is tightly tied round, we can often notice a swelling over the part which is tied. These two facts clearly prove that the sap not only ascends, but also descends in the stem. Further observations will show that many hollow trees continue to live, but that these trees die when the bark is removed all round the stem, proving that the circulation of the sap takes place not in the centre of the wood, but in the outer layers of it.

(*a*) **The Inner Structure of Stems.**—A transverse section of a *dicotyledonous tree,* such as the Teak or the Jack, exhibits the following parts of the inside structure:—

In the centre a light, spongy substance, called the *pith* (fig. 143, *c*); closely surrounding this, a harder substance called the *wood,* growing in concentric circles, being hard and dry within, but soft and wet without (*b*); the outer covering, called the *bark* (*a*).



Fig. 143.—Transverse section of the stem of a dicotyledonous tree. *a*. Bark. *b*. Wood. *c*. Pith.

Now, the tenderest part of the whole is that between wood and bark. This is called *cambium* and is the living part of the stem, continually forming new wood called *alburnum,* and new bark called *liber.* The way in which annual rings are produced is shortly described under the description of the Teak tree (page 79). Plants whose stems thus grow in girth by the addition of wood from outside under the bark are sometimes called *exogens,* a term synonymous with dicotyledon. As the bark is hard and inelastic, it cannot expand in proportion to the growth of the

wood, and therefore has to crack and split. These cracks do not, as a rule, extend to the delicate cambium which the access of air and heat would partially kill, but stop when they reach the inner layers of bark more recently formed by it.

Not all trees have stems of this structure. Palm trees, like all *monocotyledons*, follow a different plan. Their stems consist of a woody substance that resembles a bundle of sticks bound closely together, showing no concentrical layers. As they grow, new woody bundles are thrust in irregularly amongst the old ones. Hence they are also called *endogens*. There is no bark, and no pith. They are soft or even hollow within, but hard in the outer part, which makes them more pliant.

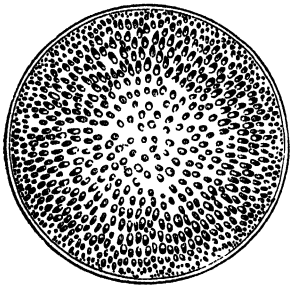


Fig. 144.— Transverse section of the stem of a monocotyledonous tree.

If we compare the large, spreading branches of the Mango or the Banyan with the simple cluster of leaves, at the top only, of the Palm tree, we can understand why their thin, cylindrical stems are sufficiently strong for them.

(*b*) **The Circulation of the Fluids.**— The question now arises — By what force does the watery sap, absorbed by the roots, ascend the tree? And how do the products, elaborated in the leaves under the influence of light, descend to their respective destinations?

In the first place we must remember that the plant is built up of numerous cells and vessels, lying one upon another. They are filled with sap. As the water of the cells at the extremities of the plant (leaves, skin of the stem) is constantly evaporated, it follows that the sap of these cells is thicker or denser than at the parts nearer the root. This fact causes a constant exchange of the sap from cell to cell by a process which is known as *diffusion* and which we shall try to understand by a simple experiment.

We take a short glass-tube and tie a piece of parchment-paper over one end of it. The tube is then filled with a strong solution of salt water and is similarly closed by parchment-paper at its other end. The whole is then placed into a vessel with pure

water. After about 24 hours we shall find that the water in the vessel has become a little salt, and that, on the other hand, the two parchment-covers are bulged out. This shows that a part of the salt solution has gone out of the tube through the parchment, and that fresh water has entered into the tube, but so that the quantity of the latter was larger than that of the former; for the fluid in the tube has increased. If one of the covers be pierced by the point of a needle, the fluid will gush out with considerable force. Now, two plant-cells filled with sap of different densities will act in the same way. A constant current will be set up through the cell-walls, and as the cells in the leaves are filled with a denser sap, the stronger current will take the upward direction. This is one of the forces which explains the rise of the sap.—Another force by which the sap is raised is commonly known as that of *capillary tubes*. It may be illustrated by holding a piece of blotting paper in ink: the ink rises. This force acts chiefly in the long and narrow vessels of the wood of trees.

The products, prepared in the green organs of the plant under the influence of light, are chiefly conveyed in vessels which are communicating by little holes like those of a strainer. Such vessels are found in the ribs of leaves (fig. 136), in the leaf-stalks, and in the inner layers of the bark.



Fig. 145.
Root-stock of Water Lily.

The *watery sap, then, absorbed by the roots, ascends mainly in the youngest layers of wood, called alburnum, whereas the products elaborated in the leaves, descend in the inner layers of the bark, called liber or bast.* Between these two layers is the cambium where, with the sap from the ground and with the starch from the leaves, new wood is formed.

3. Stems as Stores for Food in Reserve.

Some trees, like the Teak, shed their leaves in the dry season. Most of the trees do the same during winter in cold countries. They begin to grow again with the return of the rains here, or of spring there, and are in a very short time re-clothed with

their beautiful foliage, as if by a miracle. This wonderful change is only made possible by the trees availing themselves of the ready-made food deposited in their stems, which is, when required again, carried to the buds where the plant has, as if by foresight, prepared the future leaves, and, in some cases, even flowers in miniature, before it dropped its leaves.

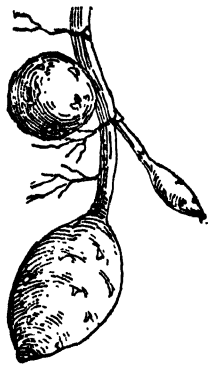


Fig. 146.
Tubers of Potato.

Certain herbs are also enabled to bear extremes of cold and drought by forming underground stems and letting their overground parts wither and die during the adverse seasons. These underground stems have stores of food in them, from which the buds in them derive their first nourishment when they burst into leaves. They have the following typical forms:

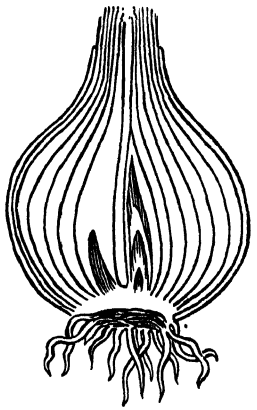


Fig. 147.
Bulb of Onion.

(*a*) the *root-stock*, or *rhizome* (Water Lily, Ginger, Aroideæ, *etc.*);
(*b*) the *tuber* (Potato, Orchids, *etc.*);
(*c*) the *bulb* (Onion, Crinum, *etc.*).

4.—THE FLOWER.

We generally look at the flowers as bright and beautiful objects intended to be a source of pleasure to us; but they are created with a different purpose. Every living thing on this earth meets at one time or another with its destroyer, Death. To perpetuate its kind or species it is, however, endowed with the power of reproduction. This work is done in plants by their *flowers*. They produce seeds, from which under favourable conditions new plants of the same kind spring up. And we shall see that everything about the flower is subservient to this one aim.

A. The Parts of the Flower.

The essential parts of the flowers are not the beautifully coloured petals, for they fade and fall off after a short time. Those parts, which remain after the petals are no more, and which are for safety placed in the centre of the flower, are more important; they form the fruit and the seeds. We must, therefore, distinguish between the essential *inner organs of reproduction,* the stamens and the pistil, and the *protecting or attracting covers,* calyx and corolla.

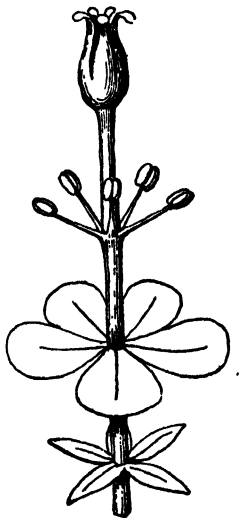


Fig. 148. — The parts of a complete flower: calyx, corolla, stamens, and pistil.

If one of the two floral envelopes is missing, as in the flower of the Castor Oil plant or of the Fig tree, the flower is called *monochlamydeous,* if both are absent as in Colocasia or Pepper, *achlamydeous.* If the flower contains stamens and no pistil, it is said to be *staminate* or male; if pistils and no stamens, *pistillate* or female. In the Papaw tree or the Palmyra Palm staminate and pistillate flowers are found on separate trees. This class of plants is called *diœcious.* Other plants, as the Jack or the Cocoanut Palm, have staminate and pistillate flowers on the same plant, and are, therefore, called *monœcious.*

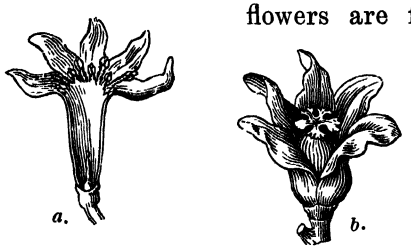


Fig. 149. — Unisexual flowers of the Papaw tree: *a.* staminate, *b.* pistillate.

1. The Floral Covers: Calyx and Corolla.

The two outer whorls of the flower *fold over and protect the inner parts.* The outer ring, sometimes formed of one whole piece or tube, and sometimes of several distinct leaves, is called the *calyx,* meaning cup. Its parts are called *sepals.* The

second ring is the *corolla* or crown, and is composed of *petals*. The corolla, too, is sometimes in one piece, as in the Coffee or the Tulasi. Such flowers are termed *gamopetalous* or *sympetalous*. Others are composed of 4, 5, or more separate petals, like the Shoeflower and the Water Lily, and are called *choripetalous*.

The Lilies, Amaryllids, Orchids, and some other flowers have also two floral envelopes. But as they are both coloured alike, the whole is often called the *perianth*.

The corolla, whether composed of one compound leaf or of several separate leaves, assumes many forms, regular or irregular, as of a tube (Ixora), a cup (Shoeflower), a bell (Pumpkin), a salver or tray (Periwinkle), a tongue (the outer florets of Sunflower), a mouth with 2 lips (Labiatæ), and in the Pea plant somewhat like a butterfly (papilionaceous flower).

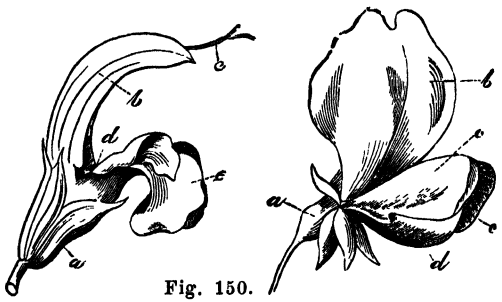


Fig. 150.
Labiate flower. Butterfly flower.

In many plants, these 2 rings of floral envelopes have to protect the delicate inner parts only so long as the flower is in bud. They are in that state, often overlapping one another and twisted (Periwinkle). To make the cover complete the sepals and petals generally alternate one with the other. In some plants either the calyx-leaves (Poppy), or the corolla-leaves (Myrtles) fall when the bud opens. In many cases the opened corolla is so constructed that it still affords the inner organs a wonderful protection against the weather: In the flowers of some of the Labiatæ the stamens are covered under the upper lip as under a shed; when the wind is strong, the blossoms of the Pea and other papilionaceous flowers turn their back to the wind, so that the inner parts are screened by the standard (*cf.* page 30); the long flower-tube of Sesamum (page 73) is hanging and thus keeps the inner parts safe; some flowers close up their petals during the rain, or at night, and open them only to the sunshine (Water Lily, page 4).

It is interesting to study also the various ways, in which flowers are protected from browsing animals, snails, and caterpillars, by thorns, spines, and spiny bracts; or how, for instance, in the Plantain or in the Aroideæ a large spathe or bract provides the flowers with the necessary protection.

At the same time the colours of the petals form an *advertisement to insects of the honey or pollen* stored within.

The petals generally fade and fall after a short time, but in many cases the calyx goes on growing and forms an additional protection to the seeds (Teak, page 81); in others, as in the Jamoon (*Can.* Nēraḷe), it becomes fleshy and coloured, forming part of the fruit, and thus helps to attract animals and birds to swallow the seeds and scatter them.

2. The Inner Organs of Reproduction: Stamens and Pistil.

After removing the outer two rings of a flower, viz., calyx and corolla, the inner organs, stamens and pistil, are left. We first find a number of threads tipped with tiny knobs or small bags, the **Stamens**. If the stamens of the Shoeflower or a Lily are shaken over a piece of paper, a fine yellow powder will drop from them. The threads are called *filaments*, the little knobs or bags at the end of them *anthers*, and the yellow powder which drops from the latter is called the *pollen*.



Fig. 151. Stamen of Hibiscus. Pollen-grains issuing from the anther (much magnified).

The stamens vary in number from one in Canna, two in Jasmine, three in Wheat, four in Ixora, five in Thorn-apple, six in Paddy, and so on, up to hundred and more in Cereus. They are often distinct from each other, but sometimes grow united into one bundle as in the Mallow family; or they may be in two bundles, as in the Peaflower tribe, where nine are combined and one stamen is separate; or they may be in several parcels, as in the flowers of the Citron and Orange.

In the Labiatæ there are 4 stamens in two pairs of various length, in the Crucifers 6, two pairs longer and one pair shorter.

In the Compositæ the filaments of the stamens are free, but their anthers are united and form a tube. In the Orchids, again, the stamen is combined with the pistil.

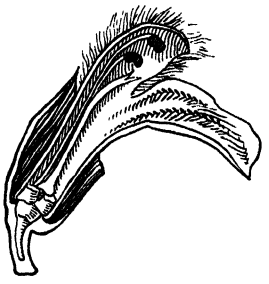


Fig. 152.— Labiate Flower: One pair of longer and one of shorter stamens (only one of each pair visible).

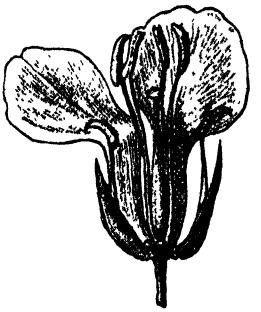


Fig. 153.—Flower of a Crucifer: 4 longer and 2 shorter stamens.



Fig. 154.—Flower of Compositæ: filaments (*g*) free, anthers (*e*) united.

If we put *pollen-grains* into water, they generally absorb at once so much of it that they burst. The same happens, if they are exposed to the rain or to dew. They must, therefore, be protected from the damp of rain or dew. If we sprinkle some pollen-grains over a drop of very weak sugar and water, they do not burst, but throw out long threads. This is what they also do when they are brought on the sticky end of the innermost part of the flower, which is the *pistil*.

The chief part of the **Pistil** is the seed-box or *ovary*, containing tiny seeds or rather ovules, which are destined to become seeds, when the fruit ripens after fertilization. This can only happen when the pollen is brought into contact with the ovules. Hence the ovary tapers at its upper end into a more or less slender pillar, the *style*. To enable the style to hold fast the pollen-grains that happen to fall on it, its end, the *stigma,* is provided with tiny warts or hairs which sometimes make it look like velvet (Shoeflower), and also with a sticky liquid which exudes from the surface of the stigma. Other stigmas (Paddy) are feathery. Some flowers, like the Poppy, have no style; the stigma is then said to be sessile.

The ovary consists of one (Pea), or more (Shoeflower, Lime)

leaves, called *carpels,* which are folded down the middle with the edges united so as to form a cavity. When there is only one carpel, there is also only one style (Pea). But when there are many carpels, as in Champaca, Cotton, *etc.,* there are generally as many styles or as many stigmas to the combined styles. The ovules are attached to the *placenta,* either on a central axis (Shoeflower), or on the walls of the ovary (Cucumber). The ovary may also contain only a single ovule (Compositæ).

Among the many modifications of the ovary we must still mention one which can be easily found and determined. The ovary is sometimes *superior,* that is, placed above the calyx (Mustard, Champaca, Pea, Tulasi), while sometimes the ovary is *inferior,* that is, below the calyx (Sunflower, Crinum).

B. The Function of the Flower: Pollination.

1. Various provisions for Cross-pollination.

Most flowers have stamens and pistils growing together on the same flower. It does not follow from this, however, that the pistil of such a flower is fertilized from its own stamens. This would be called self-pollination. Although cases of this kind do occur in nature, they are not at all common. It has been proved by many careful observations and experiments that plants on which the flowers have been self-pollinated, bear poor and insignificant fruit. As a rule, pistils are fertilized by pollen from other flowers, and to ensure such **cross-pollination** many wonderful and interesting arrangements exist, which we shall now consider.

(*a*) Stamens and pistils are *distributed over different flowers* (monœcious and dicœcious plants).

(*b*) In some plants, where the stamens and pistils do occur in the same flower, these organs *mature at different times:* in the Sunflower the stamens open when the stigma is still undeveloped; but in the Aroideæ the stigma is mature before the stamens develop their pollen.

(*c*) If both mature at the same time, the stamens and pistils are sometimes *so placed that the pollen cannot easily reach the pistil* of its own flower (Hibiscus).

(*d*) The flowers of the shrub *Clerodendron infortunatum* (*Can.* Iṭṭēvu; *Mal.* Peragu) exhibit a remarkable contrivance for cross-pollination. The white corolla and the strong, sweet scent make the flower conspicuous at dusk to moths which stretch their long tongues into the flower-tube to obtain the honey hidden in its depth. While thus hovering in front of the flower they touch the anthers of the 4 stamens that protrude from the flowers. The *style* of these flowers is *bent back* in a long downward arch. The moth will then move on to another flower which may have opened the previous night and now has its stamens curled up but the *style straight,* so that the moth cannot help touching and thus pollinating it with the pollen of the flower from which it came.



Fig. 155. — Flowers of Clerodendron.
1. First position of stamens and style.
2. Second position of the same.



Fig. 156. — Moth visiting the flower of Clerodendron.

(*e*) Another contrivance to avoid self-pollination we have found in the Orchids (page 119), where the pollen-masses are in separate pouches and can only be removed by a bee which carries them to another flower to pollinate it.

As cross-pollination is advantageous to the plant, and as the plant is unable to move, it requires some assistance to carry the pollen from one flower to another. This is obtained from insects or from the wind.

2. Pollination by the Agency of Insects.

(*a*) **What the plants can offer to their guests.**—The conveyance of the pollen from one flower to another is not done by animals purposely or voluntarily. They pay the plants their

visits only for their own sake. But while obtaining some benefit from the plants they, in their turn, unconsciously render them a very useful service in carrying their pollen to the next flower. What they seek and find in the flowers is first of all a sweet juice, commonly called honey. (It is not honey, but becomes honey in the body of the bee.) This sweet liquid, called *nectar,* is generally hidden away in the depths of the flower, and the insect must, therefore, either be furnished with a long tongue, like butterflies and moths, or must actually get its body right into the corolla, like the bee. The humble-bee, for instance, when visiting a labiate flower, alights on the lower lip of the corolla, which is admirably suited for a landing place. The weight of the insect naturally bears the flower down, and, as the bee pushes its body into the throat of the flower to reach the nectar at the bottom, its back comes in contact with the anthers and rubs off some of the pollen. This is unconsciously carried to the next flower visited, and some is rubbed off by the style.



Fig. 157.— Bee visiting a labiate flower.

Besides honey, many flowers offer them their *pollen* as food. Several flowers possess no honey at all, but instead of it plenty of pollen in their numerous stamens (Poppy, Rose). These flowers are erect and have the shape of shells or cups, so that the falling dust may not be spilt and lost (page 6).

Some flowers offer their visitors nice and snug homes to live in for a while (Aroideæ); and the Banyan tree even allows the small midges that can enter the little openings of the figs to lay their eggs in the figs (page 86).

(*b*) **How the plants attract visitors.** (i) COLOURS.— The petals of the flowers are usually brightly coloured, and are readily seen from a distance. If the corolla is inconspicuous, the bracts may become coloured as in Bougainvillea. In Mussænda (*Can.* Bellotti; *Mal.* Vellila) one calyx-lobe is much enlarged and looks like an

ordinary leaf, but is white. Flowers that open in the evening and must, therefore, be pollinated by night-moths, are generally white or pale, so as to be easily seen in the twilight (Jasmine, Crinum, Clerodendron, Nyctanthes, *etc.*).

(ii) INFLORESCENCES.—Another help to make the flowers conspicuous to visitors is their arrangement in greater numbers on a flower-stalk (peduncle), forming what is called inflorescences. They are thus raised over the foliage and afford easy access.

When the peduncle rises directly from the root, as in the Water Lily or in Crinum, it is called a *scape*. The inflorescences can be referred mainly to 3 original types: the raceme, the umbel, and the cyme.

(*aa*) *In the racemose or indefinite inflorescence* (fig. 158—160) the principal axis (peduncle) goes on elongating and gives off secondary branches (pedicels), each of which bears a flower. In these the flowers furthest from the top of the axis open first. (This is shown in the illustration by the various size of the circles denoting the flowers.)

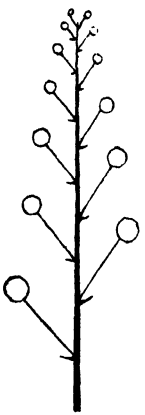


Fig. 158. Raceme.

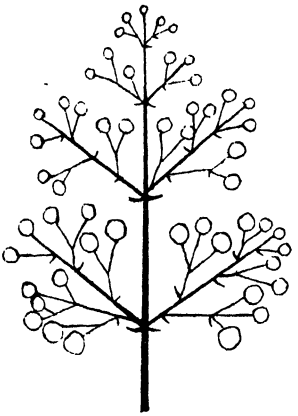


Fig. 159. Panicle.



Fig. 160. Spike.

When the peduncle bears stalked flowers, the inflorescence is called a *raceme* (Mustard, Indigo), and when these secondary branches are forked again, a *panicle* (Mango, Cinnamon, Paddy). When the flowers are sessile on the peduncle, we have a *spike* (Pepper-Vine, Habenaria).

(*bb*) *In the umbellate inflorescence* (fig. 161 and 162) the main peduncle grows to a certain point and is then suddenly divided into many pedicels of equal length.

When the flowers are spread out, each borne on a pedicel radiating like the ribs of an umbrella, we have an *umbel* (Crinum, Acacia). When each pedicel of an umbel gives rise to another umbel, the umbel is called *compound* (Carrot). When they are sessile and crowded in a dense mass, we have a *head* (Sunflower and all Compositæ).

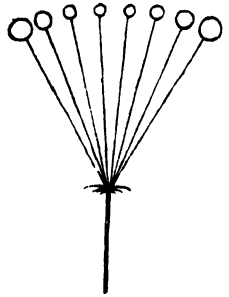


Fig. 161.—Umbel.

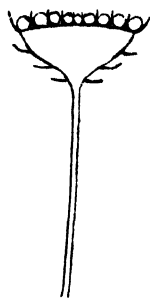


Fig. 162.—Head

(cc) *Cymose or definite inflorescences* (fig. 163). The central axis is terminated by a flower and does not elongate. But below this flower, which opens first, one or several lateral peduncles are given off. These are again terminated by a flower and again forked like the main peduncle (Clerodendron).

(iii) SCENTS. — Strong and various scents are also great helps to attract insects. The bee-tribe and butterflies are specially attracted by the sweet scent of Roses, Peas, *etc.*, and the powerful scents emitted by such flowers as the Jasmine, Tobacco, and Crinum as evening comes on, tends to guide the nocturnal moths to them.

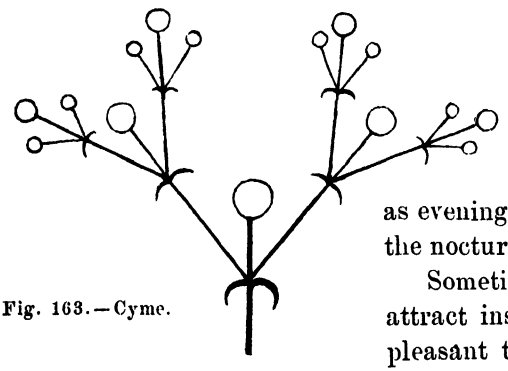


Fig. 163.—Cyme.

Sometimes the odours used to attract insects are the reverse of pleasant to us. As an instance the Nux-vomica tree may be mentioned, or *Aristolochia gigantea.*

Scentless flowers usually have some equivalent form of attraction, such as gaudy colours, abundance of pollen, or the grouping of a number of small florets; whereas inconspicuous flowers are often endowed with a particularly strong smell.

3. Pollination by the Agency of the Wind.

Among the plants whose flowers are pollinated by the help of the wind, the chief are the Grasses. The principal characteristics by which such plants may be recognised are:—

1. The flowers are *inconspicuous, scentless* and have *no sugary secretions.*

2. Their *anthers hang out of the flower,* so that the pollen can be easily set free and carried away by the wind.

3. The *pollen* is produced very *abundantly* to allow for wastage.

4. The *pollen-grains are dry* and *small* and, therefore, *light.*

5. The *stigmas are large* and *feathered,* so that pollen-grains floating in the air are easily caught.

5.—THE FRUIT AND THE SEED.

A. How the fruits are formed.

(*a*) **The Covering.**—When the little ovules in the ovary or seed-box are fertilized, the outer part of the flower fades away, its end having been attained, and the ovary begins to develop and becomes the fruit, which, under a well-protecting cover, called *pericarp,* contains the ripening seeds.

This cover is made up primarily of the walls of the ovary itself. But sometimes a swollen peduncle (Cashew Nut), or an enlarged calyx (Jamoon), or a fleshy receptacle (Strawberry) also helps to form the fruit-cover.

Generally, a single, perfect or pistillate flower produces a *single fruit,* but where the ovary has distinct carpels, distinct fruits may sometimes be found (*Unona narum*—*Can.* Uṇāmiṇi). On the other hand, where a number of flowers grow on a common receptacle, a single fruit sometimes results, as in the Pine-apple (which is made up of the ovaries and floral envelopes of several flowers combined), or the Jackfruit and the fig of the Banyan tree. These fruits are called *aggregate fruits.*

The pericarp affords *protection* to the seeds in various ways.

The soft and sweet fruits, which are so tempting to men and animals, do not, as a rule, sweeten or attain a bright colour before the seeds are quite ripe. All through the period of growth the pulpy mass, with which the seeds are surrounded, is either bitter or sour, and is usually green, the colour of the leaves.

Again, such fruits as the Cocoanut are protected by their rough covering and hard shells. Others like the Mango, have a hard covering inside the pulp. Many others have their outer coats covered with prickles, for the same reason. A very striking example of this is *Mucuna pruriens* (*Can.* Nāyisoṇagu; *Mal.* Nāyikuruṇa), which has pods like a Bean, but all covered with short, red, stinging hairs which cause a most intolerable irritation. Another kind of protection is the change of position of the fruit after fertilization, as in the Water Lily, the capsule of which is drawn under the surface of the water to ripen.

(*b*) **The Seed.**—With the growth of the covering of the fruit the seeds inside are formed of the fertilized ovules, which are, so long as they require nourishment, attached to the placenta by a cord, called the *funicle.* When the seeds are mature, the funicle withers, and leaves a scar on the seed, the *hilum.*

The structure of the seed is simple. Inside the coat, called *testa,* we can distinguish 2 parts: the germ or *embryo,* and the *food-store.* The germ contains all the essential parts of the plant, namely the root (radicle), and the stem and leaves (plumule), as can be clearly seen in the tiny bud between the seed-leaves or cotyledons of a Bean or a Pea. The food-store is either deposited in a nourishing tissue, the albumen of the seed, called *endosperm,* surrounding the germ under the seed-coat (Castor-Oil Plant, Cocoanut, Rice), or in the seed-leaves (Bean), which then swell into thick masses. The number of the seed-leaves (cotyledons) marks two large classes of the flowering plants, *viz.,* the dicotyledons (plants with two cotyledons) and the monocotyledons (plants with one cotyledon).

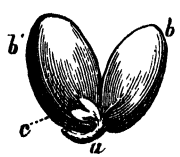


Fig. 164.— Seed of the Bean: *a.* Radicle. *b.* Cotyledons. *c.* Plumule.

When the seeds are mature and their germs in a position to live alone, they must leave the protecting covering (pericarp)

and be dispersed, so as not to germinate just under or near the mother-plant where the young plants would simply suffer from her shade and from the fact that she had used up some of the supplies of mineral food available, and that they would have a hard struggle for life with one another. The germs or young plants must, therefore, be so constructed as to be able to go on a long journey without perishing. They are in this state in the ripe seed. When fully formed they cease to be watery, the place formerly occupied by water being now filled with starch or oil, and the seed-coat becomes hard.

Many seeds, it is true, do not end their journey in a very suitable place, but die by hundreds and thousands for want of congenial surroundings, and it is for this reason that such large numbers of seeds are produced.

B. How the fruits allow their seeds to escape.

In order to enable the seeds to start on their journey, the fruit which had to protect them during the period of growth and ripening, must set them free. This is done in various ways according to the kinds of fruit.

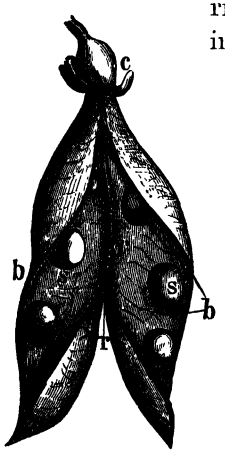


Fig. 165. Legume of Pea.

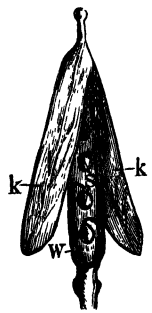


Fig. 166. Silique of a Crucifer.

(*a*) Some **dry fruits open** naturally, when the seeds are ripe, to let them out. Such are:

The **Legumes,** like those of the Pea, which split into two valves and in which the seeds are not divided by a central frame;

the **Siliques** and **Silicules,** like those of the Mustard, opening by two longitudinal slits, forming also two valves, but with a central frame to which the seeds adhere;

the **Follicle,** also two-valved, but opening by one longitudinal slit only, and with the seeds variously distributed, like the fruit of the Asclepiadaceæ;

the **Capsule,** sometimes splitting into various valves (Sesamum), or breaking up irregularly, or opening by small holes (Poppy).

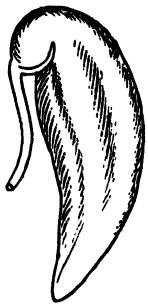


Fig. 167. Follicle of Madar.



Fig. 168. Capsule of Poppy.

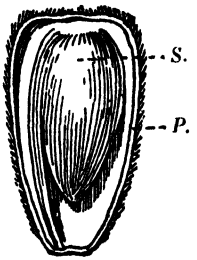


Fig. 169. Achenium of Sunflower (opened). *P.* Pericarp. *S.* Seed.



Fig. 170. Four nutlets of Tumbe. Front part of calyx removed.

(b) **Dry Fruits that do not open** by valves, are either one-seeded like the cocoanut, the achenium of the Sunflower, and Grass-seeds; or many-seeded like the fruit of the Labiatæ, where the carpels separate from the axis and form 4 nutlets.

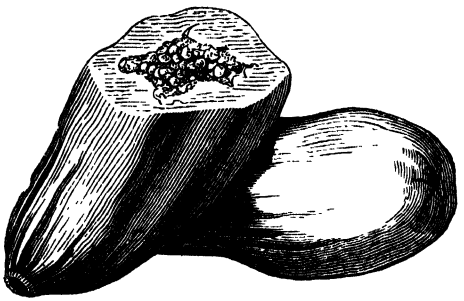


Fig. 171.—Berry of the Papaw tree.

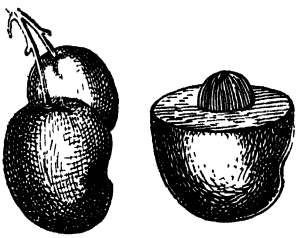


Fig. 172.—Drupe of Mango.

(c) **Fleshy Fruits** do not open by themselves. They either rot on the ground and thus set the seeds free, or are eaten by animals, which digest the flesh and reject the seeds. Such are the **berries,** with many seeds, as the papaw, the guava, brinjal and banana; and the **drupe,** with one seed, generally enclosed in a hard shell, as the mango.

C. How the seeds are dispersed.

It is not enough that fruits should allow their seeds to escape. If they would only fall down and begin life again directly under the leaves of the parent plant, they would, as already stated, not get sufficient light and air, and would find a soil from which a great deal of the plant-food had already been extracted by the mother-plant, and would starve. To ensure the dispersion of the seeds over a wide area, various wonderful provisions are made. As the plants cannot move of themselves, they often make use of the agency of running water, of wind, animals and birds, and with their help undertake long journeys to distant countries and even cross oceans.

(*a*) **Dispersed by mechanical contrivances.**—Some plants contain, within themselves, the means necessary to scatter the seeds. This is in some cases an *elastic force* by which the seeds are thrown away from the parent plant, as in the capsule of Balsams. "The seed-pod is generally in a state of tension, due to the gradual drying up of the tissue. Then a puff of wind, a slight blow, or even a change in the atmospheric condition of the air, gives the final impetus, causing the pod to burst with such force that seeds are thrown out in all directions" (*Brightwen*).

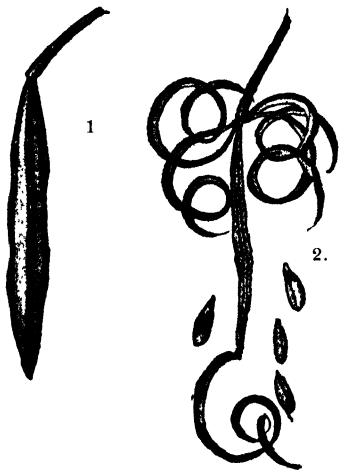


Fig. 173.—Capsule of a Balsam: 1. closed, 2. exploding and scattering the seeds.

In other cases, the seeds are furnished with *awns,* as in many Grasses. Each awn is thickly set with bristles which allow the awn to move only in one direction. As these are sensitive to moisture, the difference in the amount of moisture in the air lengthens and contracts them, so that the seeds attached to them are slowly but surely drawn away many inches.

(*b*) **Dispersed by water.**—Many water-plants have seeds or fruits which float. An air-bubble is attached to the seed of the Water Lily which causes it to rise to the surface. The cocoa-nut is provided with a strong, but light covering, and, if it falls into the sea, it may be carried by the waves hundreds of miles. How many seeds that fall to the ground during the hot season are washed away by the torrents of rain of the bursting monsoon and landed on a spot far away from the mother-plant, the hard seed-shells protecting the tender germ within from destruction!

(*c*) **Carried by the wind.**—We are all familiar with the winged fruits of so many trees, such as Hopea Wightiana (*Can.* Karmara; *Mal.* Ilapongu; *Tam.* Kongu) or Hopea parviflora (*Can.* Bōvu, bōgi), and with the winged appendages of the seeds of Bignonia (*Can.* Puruḷi; *Mal.* Pātiri; *Tam.* Pādiri). The fruits of many Compositæ and Asclepiadaceæ are provided with silky or feathery hairs (called "pappus" in Compositæ), which catch the wind and allow the seed to be borne away even by the gentlest breeze. In some cases, as in Poppy and Ladies' Finger, the capsules are placed on long stalks, which the wind shakes with so much force that the seeds are thrown away as from a sling.

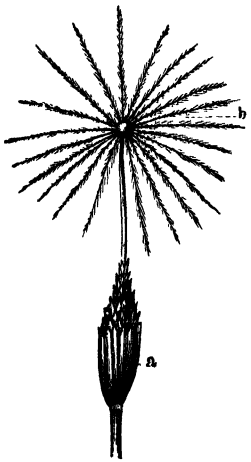


Fig. 174.—Seed of Lettuce, with pappus.


Fig. 175. Seed of Madar.

(*d*) **Dispersed by animals and birds.**—This is done either unconsciously or consciously: unconsciously, when the seeds by their hooks or bristles become attached to the skin of animals, or by the sticky mass of their pulp (Loranthus) to the beaks of birds which carry them away; consciously, when animals or birds, attracted by the bright colour and the fragrant smell of succulent berries and drupes, revel upon the sweet, soft flesh, but reject the seeds (Mango). If they swallow the seed also, the

latter is enabled to resist the action of digestion by its hard covering and passes through the bird undigested (Coffee, Fig).

D. How the seeds produce new plants.

When a seed has thus finished its journey and has found favourable conditions (warmth, moisture, and air) on the spot where it has finally settled, it awakes from the state of rest in which the germ contained in it has tided over a season that might have been fatal to its life, and begins to germinate. First it absorbs moisture through its skin. This, combined with warmth and the oxygen of the air, sets up a change in the condition of the seed. The germ swells, breaks the seed-skin, and begins to grow: the tiny root of the embryo lengthens and grows downwards, while the other part stretches upwards. For this first process of growth the young plant requires the food-store provided by the mother-plant. It can be observed in every germinating seed, how the supply of food is gradually exhausted as the plant grows. And it lasts just long enough for the young plant to form roots and green leaves by which to obtain its nourishment direct from the soil and air.

APPENDIX

1. Nomenclature and Classification of Plants.

1. **Species.**— The fact that plants, reared from the seeds of a mother-plant, are like each other and like the parent, is familiar to everybody. Thus plants that spring from the seeds of a Banyan tree become Banyan trees again, and such as spring from Cucumber-seeds become Cucumbers. All such plants, therefore, which appear to have sprung from the same parent, and agree with each other in all essential parts, constitute a *species*.

There is, however, some variation in the development of the various parts of plants belonging to the same species, which is caused by differences of soil, climate, and other conditions. In identifying plants beginners must, therefore, distinguish between essential and accidental variations (*cf.* Tumbe, page 75). The following extract from Sir Jos. Hooker gives the chief causes of such variations:—

"A bright light and open situation, particularly at considerable elevations, without too much wet or drought, tends to increase the size and heighten the colour of flowers in proportion to the stature and foliage of the plant. Shade, on the contrary, especially with rich soil and sufficient moisture, tends to increase the foliage and draw up the stem, but to diminish the number, size, and colour of the flowers. A hot climate and dry situation tend to increase the hairs, prickles, and other productions of the epidermis, and to shorten and stiffen the branches. Moisture in a rich soil has the contrary effect. The neighbourhood of the sea, or a saline soil or atmosphere, imparts a thicker and more succulent consistence to the foliage and almost every part of the plant, and appears not unfrequently to enable plants, usually annual, to live through the winter.

"The luxuriance of plants growing in a rich soil, and the dwarf, stunted character of those crowded in poor soils, or in the cold, damp regions of high mountain-tops, is well-known."

2. **Genera.**—We have seen that the Banyan tree (*Ficus bengalensis*) constitutes a species. If we muster the vegetable kingdom, we can easily find other trees which resemble the Banyan tree in most important points of structure, such as the Peepul tree or the Country Fig-tree. Such plants form one *genus*, viz. the genus "Ficus".

3. The **Scientific Nomenclature** of plants is based on this classification into species and genera. Thus the Banyan tree is known as *Ficus bengalensis* and the Peepul tree as *Ficus religiosa*, the common first name "Ficus" denoting the genus, and the second "bengalensis" or "religiosa" the species.

Plants have, of course, also popular names; but as these vary not only in various countries, but even in different parts of the same country, and as different plants are also called by the same name in different parts of a country, such popular names are useless for students of botany. Hence scientific names, derived from Latin and Greek, are applied to plants, by which they are known to all educated people of the world.

4. **Natural Orders, Classes, etc.**—Several genera which agree in certain marked characters, constitute a natural order, also called a family, and several orders still larger divisions. In this manner we have grouped:

the *genera* of Gossypium, Hibiscus, Bombax, *etc.*, under the *natural order* of Malvaceæ;

the *orders* of Malvaceæ, Cruciferæ, Leguminosæ and others under the *sub-class* Choripetalæ (= plants with separated petals);

the *sub-classes* of choripetalous, sympetalous (= of united petals) and monochlamydeous plants (= having a single instead of a double perianth) under the *class* of Dicotyledons;

the *classes* of dicotyledonous and monocotyledonous plants under the *division* of Phanerogams (= flowering plants);

and the two *divisions* of phanerogamous and cryptogamous (flowerless) plants under the Vegetable *Kingdom*.

2. Distribution of Plants.

1. Any ramble through the neighbourhood of our houses teaches us that plants are variously distributed. Some prefer the open field as their habitat, others the shady woods; some the rich loam near rivers and tanks, others the dry and rocky soil of hills or deserts. It is **the difference of soil, light, and moisture,** which thus conditions the change of vegetation in various places.

2. An excursion into remoter parts of our country, or to the top of a high mountain, shows a still greater difference. This is due to **the change of the climate,** viz. heat and moisture, in various parts of India.

So, when we ascend a mountain of the Himalayas, we have to travel through different belts of vegetation: about the base we find Palms and Bananas; a little higher, Bamboos, Figs, Ferns, *etc.*; higher up, Myrtles and Laurels; then Conifers and dwarf-trees; and in the highest regions the flowering plants cease to grow more and more and leave the place to mosses and other cryptogams.

The same succession of different classes of plants is noticed by travellers from the equatorial to the polar regions of the earth.

3. An important part in the distribution of plants is played **by man.** It is he who has brought new plants from foreign countries and from far remote continents to our land (Spanish Pepper, Coffee, Tobacco, Potato, and many others); who has cultivated large tracts of land with food-crops and other useful plants (Cereals, Pulses, Cotton, Opium, *etc.*), and suppressed the indigenous weeds that were growing there before; who cuts down forests to plant crops more useful to him; who drains swamps and irrigates deserts to make them fertile.

INDEX TO VERNACULAR NAMES

Açvattha 86.
Āḍalai 92.
Aḍaluharaḷu 92.
Ādavi-āmudamu 92.
Aḍavigannēru 60.
Aḍḍasaramu 74.
Aḍike=Areca Palm 104.
Āḍoḍai 74.
Āḍusōge 74.
Agnimukhi 24.
Ākāçavaḷḷi 95.
Āla 83.
Ālimbe 142.
Aliviral 15.
Allikāḍa 1.
Āmaṇakku 89.
Ambālam 24.
Ambaṭa 24.
Āmrah 19.
Amratā 110.
Āmrātaka 24.
Āmudāla 89.
Ananas 116.
Andipunar 19.
Ānekattāli 115. 158.
Ānekivi 136.
Aṅjūra 87.
Araçamaram 86.
Araḷe 10.
Araḷimara 86.
Arasina-hū 60.
Araṭi 123.
Arayāl 86.
Ardhaprasādana 55.
Ari 125.
Arippu 81.
Arisina 123.
Arkāh 61.
Arkamu 61.
Ārugani 18.
Āṭalōṭakam 74.
Atasi 15.
Atti 87.
Auḍla 89.
Aunlā 91.
Āvālu 8.
Avare = Bean 31.
Badane 68.
Bagaru 132.
Baiṅgan 68.
Bāḷe 123.
Bandaṇige=Loranthus 95.
Baṅgi 89.
Barbūrah 25.
Baṭāṇi 25.
Baṭāṭā 64.
Bātkōḷihū = Aristolochia 182.
Beini = Sago Palm 106.
Belloṭṭi 50. 180.
Beḷḷuḷḷi 111.
Bēḷuballi 95.
Beṇḍekāyi 11.
Bhadravalli 63.
Bhāsā 133.
Bhatta 125.
Biduru 133.
Biḷē jōla 132.
Bilimbi 17.
Bōgi 188.
Boṇḍuḷa 68.
Bōvu 188.
Bunnu 47.
Čabuku = Casuarina 135.
Čadavēlikiḷaṅu 111.
Čāgiḍa 13.
Čallagaḍḍalu 111.
Čaṅgalamparanda 18.
Čaṇḍe 60.
Čapparabadane 68.
Čāttiravēri 111.
Čāyagiḍa 13.
Čēḷukoṇḍi 136.
Čemmuḷḷi 74.
Čempu 107.
Çēngoṭaimaram 24.
Čērmara 24.
Čeruku 132.
Četti 50.
Čiṭṭāmaṇakku 89.
Čōlam 132.
Çōphaharā 24.
Čukrikā 158.
Çuṇṭhi 121.
Čūtah 19.
Dālčini 93.
Dāruharidrā 51.
Dāsāla = Shoeflower 11.
Dattūra 68.
Drākshe 18.
Dundubha 8.
Duṇḍumallige 57.
Edakūla 60.
Ekka 61.
Ēlači 123.
Ēlakki 123.
Ēlam 123.
Eḷḷu 73.
Eraṇḍikējhāḍ 89.
Erikku 61.
Ērilapāla 60.
Erōppakaita 115.
Erumaittakkāḷi 68.
Gajakarna 136.
Gannā 132.
Gāṅjā 89.
Garga 56.
Garji 60.
Gasagasa 4.
Geṇasu = Sweet Potato 64.

Gērkāyi 24.
Gēru 24.
Gōdumai 131.
Gōdhi 131.
Gōdhumalu 131.
Gōḷi 83.
Gulābi 36.
Guḷḷa 68.
Guṇḍuçanagalu 25.
Gurgoṅji = Abrus 31.
Guvvulu 73.
Halasu 88.
Halavumakkalatāyi 111. 152.
Haldi 123.
Hāle 60. 154.
Haraḷu 89.
Haripriya 110.
Hatti 10.
Hāvase = Moss 139.
Hesaru = Green Gram 31.
Hīrekāyi = Luffa 46.
Hogesoppu 67.
Hoḷečuḷḷi 74.
Hongara 34.
Hottutirugaṇa 51.
Huṇise 34.
Huruḷi = Horse Gram 31.
Hūvarasu = Portia Tree 11.
Īčala = Wild Date 106.
Ilapoṅgu 188.
Īḷattalari 60.
Iṅči 121.
Indiravāčam 1.
Indrāṇi 81.
Īrampana = Sago Palm 106.
Īruḷḷi 111.
Iṭṭēvu 82. 179.
Jāmapaṇḍu 39.
Jāmbavam 39.
Javegōdi 132.
Jiḍičeṭṭu 24.
Jīḍimāmiḍi 24.
Jīvani 60.
Kabbu 132.
Kaçakaça 4.
Kaçumāvu 24.
Kāḍajīrige 56.
Kaḍale = Bengal Gram 31.
Kadali 123.
Kāḍu-basaḷe 158.
Kaḍugu 8.
Kaḍuka 8.
Kāḍusampige 60.
Kaiyaṇṇi 56.
Kālā-miriči 96.
Kalivi 60.
Kalli 91. [46.
Kallangaḍi = Water Melon
Kalutaimuḷḷi 74.
Kāmakastūri 78.
Kaṇagilu 60.
Kaṇāvīram 60.
Kaṅčāvu 89.
Kāndaḷ 110.
Kāphi 47.
Karaḍikaṇṇu 110.
Karaṇḍe 56.
Karaṇṭa 60.
Karavīrah 60.
Kārelḷu 73.
Karijāli 35.
Karimbu 132.
Karkaṭi 43.
Karmara 188.
Kārpāsah 10.
Karumbu 132.
Karuparutti 10.
Karuva 93.
Karuvēl 35.
Kasakase 4.
Kastūripaṭṭe 60.
Kāṭāmaṇakkụ 92.
Kāṭaraḷi 60.
Kāṭṭumā 24.
Kavyamu 96.
Kēdage 109.
Kēḷa 60.
Kēli 123.
Kempu Kāsiganagilu 58.
Kēpala 50.
Kēra 24.
Kesaričeṭṭu 114.
Kesu 107.
Kētaki 109.
Kisgāra 50.
Konde 34.
Koṅgu 188.
Konne 34.
Koriṇḍa 60.
Kōtampam 131.
Kottān 95.
Kovrai 34.
Koyyāpalam 39.
Kṛishṇamūla 74.
Krishṭi 57.
Kūkai 123.
Kumbala = Cucurbita 46.
Kuru-muḷagụ 96.
Kusubi 56.
Kūve 123.
Lakki 81.
Lālmirči 68.
Lasun 111.
Lavaṅga 93.
Madār 61.
Mādavāla 14.
Mādiphalamu 14.
Māduḷaṅgam 14.
Malampēra 39.
Mallige 57.
Maṅčal 123.
Maṅjāḍi 36.
Maṅjeṭṭi 36.
Marabaḷe 121.
Maradarasina 51.
Marasaṇige 109.
Maričeṭṭu 83.
Mātuḷaṅga 14.
Māvu 19.
Mekkejōḷa 132.
Meṇasu 68.

Mēttōnni 110.
Miḷagāyi 68.
Miḷagu 96.
Mirapakāyi 68.
Mokkaiṧōlam 132.
Moṭṭāmpuḷi 68.
Mullaṅgi = Radish 9.
Muḷḷugaḷḷi 41.
Muḷḷugōraṇṭe 74.
Muḷḷusaute 43.
Mulugu 51.
Mundirikai 24.
Mūṅgil 133.
Muttala 34.
Nāṧike-giḍa 36.
Nāgajamuḍu 41.
Nāgatāḷi 41.
Naidile 1.
Nallatumma 35.
Nāmadabēru 63.
Nandibaṭlu 60.
Nannāri 63.
Nāralkejhāḍ 98.
Nātagiḍa 81.
Nāval 39.
Navaṇe 132.
Nāyikoḍe 142.
Nāyikuruṇa 184.
Nāyisoṇagu 184.
Nāyituḷasi 56.
Nelakaḍale = Ground Nut 31.
Nelamuṧṧaḷa 56. 74.
Nelatāvare 117.
Nelli 91.
Nētrāṧṧōtana 11.
Nilavēpu 74.
Nīrāmpal 1.
Nīrāṭa 109.
Nirguṇḍi 81.
Nīruḷḷi 111.
Nunāmarm 51.
Oḷḷē meṇasu 96.
Ondelaga 152.
Orelatāvare 117.
Pāṧitīge 95.
Pādiri 188.
Padmā 4.
Palāṧu 88.
Pān 97.
Panai 104.
Panasa 88.
Paṅgi 89.
Paninīrpu 36.
Pappāya 47.
Pareṅgimuḷaku 68.
Pārijātaka 57.
Parutti 10.
Pasupu 123.
Pātali 11.
Pātiri 188.
Pattāṇi 25.
Patti 10.
Pavalamallu 57.
Payiṉāṧulli 74.
Peragu 82. 179.
Pērāl 83.
Pēraḷe 39.
Pētakkāli 68.
Pilāvu 88.
Pilimbi 17.
Pippala 86.
Pontiṧṧōḷam 132.
Poppili 51.
Pukayila 67.
Puḷiyāral 158.
Puḷḷampuṇise 158.
Puruḷi 188.
Pūvarasu = Portia tree 11.
Rāgi 132.
Raktajāji 8.
Rāmatuḷasi 78.
Ratnagandhi 34.
Rāviṧeṭṭu 83.
Rēlaṧeṭṭu 34.
Rēshmikambali-giḍa 82.
Rudrapushpa 74.
Sadāmallige 58
Sāgōni 78.
Sahadēvi 55.
Sāme 132.
Sampige 178.
Samudrahāle 64.
Sandubaḷḷi 18.
Saṇabu = Sunn Hemp 31.
Sankēśvara 34.
Śaṅkapushpa 25. 31. 34.
Sarshapah 8.
Sāsive 8.
Saute 43.
Seitānahū 60.
Sēvantige 56.
Sīge 36.
Sīmaikiḷaṅgu 107.
Sītāphala = Custard Apple 153.
Sītōtpala 1.
Śivaśaktibaḷḷi 110.
Śivatulasi 78.
Skandaphala 88.
Sōṇṭ 121.
Sōrekāyi = Bottle Gourd 46.
Srītāḷi = Talipot 104.
Sūryakānti 51.
Suvarnaka 34.
Tāḍ 104.
Tagaram 60.
Takkāli 68.
Tāḷam 104.
Tāḷi 104.
Talipot 104.
Tamalapāku 97.
Tamarung 17.
Tambāku 67.
Tāmbūlam 97.
Tāṭi 104.
Tāvare 1.
Tēka 78.
Tēkku 78.
Tēṅa 98.
Teṅgu 98.
Teṅkaiṧeṭṭu 98.

Thay-ila 13.
Tilah 73.
Tirukalḷi 91.
Tōkēgōdhi 132.
Trikaṇṭaka 91.
Triṇarāja 98.
Tuḍaivāĕi 114.
Tuḷasi 78
Tumbe 74. 152. 190.
Tumpa 74.
Uddu = Black Gram 31.
Ummatta 68.
Uṇāmiṇi 183.
Ūrakiryātu 74.
Uraḷagaḍḍe 64.
Ūrāḷagiḍa 153.
Urulakiḷaṅu 64.
Urvāruka 43.
Utaḷam 60.
Vajravaḷḷi 18.
Vāḷa 123.
Vaḷudalai 68.
Vaḷutina 68.
Vaṅkāyi 68.
Vaṭah 83.
Veḍḍi 50.
Veduru 133.
Velḷāmbal 1.
Velḷānpal 1.
Velḷarika 43
Velḷila 50. 180.
Velḷuḷḷi 111.
Veḷuttapoḷatāḷi 114.
Veḷuttaraḷi 60.
Veṇḍa 11.
Vettilaikkoḍi 97.
Vilumbi 17.
Vīḷyada-balḷi 97.
Vishamandala 114.
Vishamuṅguli 114.
Vishṇukrānti 64.
Vishṇupriya 60.
Vrīhi 125.
Yava 132.
Yavalu 132

INDEX AND GLOSSARY

Abrus 31.
Absorption of carbonic acid 158.
Acacia 35.
Acanthaceæ, the Acanthus Family 74.
Accommodation to conditions 75. 190.
Achenium—a small, dry, one-seeded fruit that does not split 51. 55. 186.
Acids in plants 163.
Achlamydeous—having no floral envelope 174.
Adenanthera 36.
Adhatoda 74.
Adiantum 136.
Adventitious roots 41. 168.
Aegle 51.
Aerial roots — roots pendent in the air 83. 168.
Agaricus 142.
Agave 115.
Ageratum 56.
Aggregate fruits 183.
Air-chambers 2. 155.
Albumen—reserve material contained in the seed, analogous to the white of an egg 126. 184.
Albuminoids 149. 163.
Alburnum—sapwood 170.
Alkaloids 163.
Allamanda 60.
Allium 111.
Almond 39.
Alocasia 109.
Aloe, American 115.
Alstonia 60. 154.
Alternate leaves 153.
Amaryllideæ, the Amaryllis Family 114.
Ampelideæ, the Vine Family 18.
Anacardiaceæ, the Mango Family 19.
Anacardium 24.
Ananas 116.
Andipunar tree 19.
Andrographis 74.
Angiosperms—plants having their seeds enclosed in a seed-vessel 135.
Annuals — plants whose duration of life is only one season 169.
Annual rings of wood 79.
Anther—the case at the end of the stamen containing pollen: pollen-bag 176.
Apocynaceæ, the Dogbane Family 58.
Apple 39.
Arachis 31.
Areca 104.
Argemone 7.
Argyreia 64.
Aristolochia 182.
Aroideæ, the Arum Family 107.
Arrowroot 123.
Artocarpus 88.
Asclepiadaceæ, the Milkweed Family 61.
Asparagus 111. 168. 170.
Assimilation — the conversion of crude food into protoplasm 158.
Atropa 68.
Avena 132.
Averrhoa 17.
Awla tree 91.
Awn—the bristle or beard of a grass-seed 126. 131. 187.
Axil—the angle formed by the junction of the leaf to the stem.
Bacilli 144.
Bacteria 144.
Bael tree 15.
Balsam 17.
Bamboo 133.
Bambusa 133.
Banana 123.
Banyan tree 83.
Bark—the rough external part of a stem 19. 170.
Barleria 74.
Barley 132.
Bast (liber) — the inner bark 15. 170.
Bauhinia 49.
Bean 31.
Berry —a pulpy fruit containing several seeds 48. 186.
Betel leaf 97.
Biennial—a herb whose duration of life is two seasons 169.
Bifid—divided into two parts.
Bignonia 188.
Bilimbi tree 17.
Bindweed Family 63.
Bipinnate—twice pinnate 35. 153.
Bladderwort 70.

Blade—the broad part of the leaf 151.
Blight 144.
Bloomy coating on leaves 5. 17. 157.
Blue gum tree 40.
Bombax 11.
Borassus 104.
Bottle gourd 46.
Bougainvillea 180.
Bowstring Hemp 17.
Bract — a modified leaf differing from other leaves in shape and colour, and generally situated on the peduncle near the flower 10. 53.
Brassica 8.
Brinjal 68.
Bristly hairs 44.
Bromelia 116.
Bruguiera 40.
Bryophyllum 158.
Budding 37.
Bulb — a scaly underground stem 112. 173.
Bunt 144.
Butea 34.
Butterfly Flower 29. 175.
Butterwort Family 70.
Cabbage 10.
Cacao 14.
Cacteæ 41.
Cæsalpinieæ 34.
Caffeine 50.
Caladium 108.
Calamus 106.
Calotropis 61.
Calyptra — the hood of a moss-fruit 141.
Calyx—the outer cover of a flower 174.
Cambium — a layer of active growing wood-tissue 95. 170.
Camellia 13.
Cane Palm 106.
Cannabis 89.
Cape Gooseberry 68.
Capillary tubes 172.
Capsicum 68.
Capsule — any dry, many-seeded fruit opening by valves, teeth, etc. 6. 186.
Carallia 19.
Carbonic acid — a gas existing in small quantities in the air, consisting of carbon and oxygen 160.
Cardamoms 123.
Carica 47.
Carissa 60.
Carpel — one of the parts of a compound pistil, a pistillate leaf 178
Carthamus 56.
Caryophyllus 40.
Caryota 106.
Cashew nut 24.
Cassia 34.
Cassytha 95.
Castor oil plant 89.
Casuarina 135.
Cattleya 120.
Cauliflower 10.
Cell 148.
Cell-contents 149.
Cell-sap 149.
Cellular plants — plants consisting of cells only 140.
Cell-wall 149.
Cerbera 60.
Cereals — edible grain [143.
Cereus 41.
Chaste tree 81.
Cherry 39.
Chillies 67.
Chlorophyll — the green colouring matter of leaves and stems 93. 149. 162.
Chocolate tree 14.
Choripetalæ — plants having flowers with petals separated from one another 1. 175.
Chrysanthemum 56.
Cicer 31.
Cinchona 50.
Cinnamon tree 93.
Citron 14.
Citrullus 46.
Citrus 14.
Classification 190.
Clerodendron 82.
Climbers 33. 169.
Clitoria 33.
Cloves 40.
Cocoanut 98.
Cocos 98.
Codiæum 92.
Coffea 47.
Coffee Family 47.
Coleseed 10.
Colocasia 107
Colours of flowers 180.
Column of Orchids 117.
Compositæ, the Composite Family 51.
Coniferæ, the Pine Family 135.
Connective — the portion of the anther connecting the pollen-bearing lobes 77.
Convolvulaceæ, the Bindweed Family 63.
Coral tree 31. 32.
Corchorus 14.
Cordate — heart-shaped [152.
Cork 19.

Corn Poppy 7.
Corolla — the second whorl of the floral cover, usually brightly coloured 175.
Corona — any appendage that intervenes between the corolla and stamens, as the rays of a Passion flower 46, or the column in Calotropis 62.
Corypha 104.
Cosmos 56.
Cotton 11.
Cotyledon — a seed-leaf 25. 126.
Country Fig tree 87.
Creeper 27. 169.
Crenate — having rounded notches at the edge 153.
Crinum 114.
Cross-pollination 82. 178.
Crotalaria 17. 31. 147.
Croton 92.
Cruciferæ, the Crucifer Family 8.
Cryptogamæ — flowerless plants 136.
Cucumber 43.
Cucumis 43.
Cucurbita 46.
Cucurbitaceæ, the Cucumber and Gourd Family 43.
Culm — the straw-like stem of the grass-family 135. 128.
Cultivated Fig 87.
Curcuma 123.
Custard Apple 153.
Cupressus 135.
Cyme — an inflorescence in which the successive central flowers expand first 182.
Dark colour of leaves 3. 118. 156.
Dahlia 56. 168.
Dalbergia 31.
Date Palm 106.
Datura 68. [145.
Decay caused by Bacteria
Decussate — with opposite pairs alternating at right angles 48. 153.
Definite inflorescences — inflorescences whose principal axis terminates in a flower 182.
Dentate — with sharp pointed notches and intermediate curves 152.
Desert plants 35. 42. 115.
Dhak tree 34.
Dicotyledon — a plant whose embryo has two primary seed-leaves 1. 25. 100. 170.
Diffusion — the intermingling of fluids 171.
Digitate — fingered, diverging from a common centre as the fingers from the palm 153.
Dioecious — having the staminate and pistillate flowers on different plants 47. 174.
Dispersion of seeds 187.
Distribution of plants 192.
Dogbane Family 58.
Downy coat of leaves 59.
Dolichos 31.
Dracæna 111.
Dragon tree 111.
Drosera 71.
Drupe — a fruit in which the outer part is fleshy while the inner hardens like a nut, forming a stone with a kernel 23. 186.
Duckweed 109.
Eclipta 56.
Egg-plant 68.
Elephant creeper 64.
Elephantopus 56.
Elettaria 123.
Eleusine 132.
Embryo — the future plant contained in the substance of the seed 25. 126. 184.
Endogen — a plant whose stem grows by additions developed from the inside, synonymous with Monocotyledon 100. 171.
Endosperm — the albuminous tissue which surrounds the embryo in many seeds 184.
Entire edge of a leaf 152.
Epidermis — the skin of a plant 3. 161
Epiphyte — a plant growing upon another plant, but not deriving its nourishment from it 121.
Eriodendron 11.
Erythrina 31.
Ethereal oil — volatile oil 8. 78. 93.
Eucalyptus 40.
Eucharis Lily 116.
Eugenia 39.
Euphorbiaceæ, the Spurge Family 89.
Euphorbia 91.
Evolvulus 64.
Exogen — a plant whose stem grows by addition to outside of wood and

inside of bark synonymous with Dicotyledon 79. 170.
Fall of leaves 80. 85.
Fan Palm 104.
Fatty oils 8. 163.
Ferns 136.
Fermentation 18. 147.
Fertilization 178.
Fibre — one of the fine, thread-like parts of which the tissue of plants is constituted 16.
Fibrous roots 98. 127. 167.
Ficus 83.
Fig 85.
Fig Family 83.
Filament — the stalk of the anthers 176.
Filices 136.
Fission Fungi 144.
Flax plant 15.
Fleabane 55.
Floret — a little flower 53.
Flower 173.
Flower Fence 34.
Flower-head 52.
Flowering plants 1.
Flowerless plants 136.
Folding leaves 35. 44. 156.
Follicle — a simple fruit opening by its ventral suture only 63. 185.
Four-o'clock plant 168.
Frond — the leaf of a Fern 136.
Food of plants in reserve 65. 80. 112. 122. 173.
Fruit — the full-grown, ripened pistil 183.
Fungi, the Mushroom and Mould Family 142.
Funicle — the cord by which the seed is attached to the placenta 183.
Gardenia 51.
Garlic 111.
Genus 191.
Geraniaceæ 17.
Germination 189, — of Pea 25, — of Mangrove 41, — of Cucumber 43, — of Rice 126.
Gingelly 73.
Ginger Family 121.
Ginger plant 121.
Glabrous — having no hairs.
Glands — cells or hairs containing or secreting resinous or oily matter 72. 78.
Gloriosa 110.
Glume — the husk or chaff of grass-flowers and grass-seeds 125. 130.
Goat's-Foot creeper 64.
Goldmohur tree 34.
Gossypium 10.
Gourd 46.
Grafting 19. 37.
Gram 31.
Gramineæ, the Grass Family 125.
Grape-vine 18.
Grass Family 125.
Ground-nut 31.
Growing point of root 167.
Guava 39.
Gum 35.
Gymnosperms — plants with naked seeds 135.
Gymnostachyum 74.
Habenaria 117.
Habitat — the natural abode of a plant 118. 192.
Hair-moss 140.
Hairs 158.
Haulm — the stem of a grass 125. 128.
Head — the inflorescence of Compositæ 52. 182.
Heartwood — the matured, central portion of the wood of exogens 79.
Helianthus 51.
Hemidesmus 63.
Hemp 17. 89.
Herb — a plant that lives only during one or two seasons 169.
Hevea 92.
Hibiscus 11.
Hilum — the scar left upon a seed when it is separated from the placenta 184
Hog Plum tree 24.
Hopea 188.
Hordeum 132.
Hydrocotyle 152.
Imparipinnate — pinnate with an odd leaflet 37.
Impatiens 17.
Indefinite inflorescences [181.
Indian Corn 132.
Indian Cotton 10.
Indian Laburnum 34.
Indian Millet 132.
Indian Mustard 8.
India Rubber 92.
Indigo 31.
Indigofera 31.
Inferior ovary — below the lobes of the calyx 114. 178.
Inflorescence — arrangement of the flowers on the flower-stalk 181.
Insectivorous plants 70.
Insects as agents of pollination 82. 119.

Insertion of leaves in the stem 153.
Intercellular spaces — spaces between the cells 161.
Internode — the piece of a stem between two nodes 129.
Ipomœa 63.
Italian Millet 132.
Ixora 50.
Jack tree 88.
Jamoon 39. 176.
Jasminum 57.
Jatropha 92.
Jute 14.
Keel — a part of the papilionaceous flower 30.
Kesu plant 107.
Knolkohl 10.
Labiatæ, the Labiate Family 74.
Lactuca 53. 56
Ladies' Fingers 11.
Lagenaria 46.
Lanceolate — shaped like a lance-head, *i. e.*, oval, tapering to both extremities 152.
Lantana 81.
Lauraceæ, the Laurel Family 93.
Leaf 151.
Leaflet — the division of a compound leaf 153.
Leathery consistency of epidermis 20. 42. 158.
Leek 111.
Legume — the pod of the Pea family 31. 185.
Leguminosæ 24.
Lemna 109.
Lemon 15.
Lentibulariaceæ, the Butterwort Family 70.
Lettuce 53. 56.
Leucas 74.
Liber — the inner bark 15. 170.
Liberation of the seed from the cover of the fruit 185.
Ligulate florets — strap-shaped florets 53.
Ligule — the membrane at the base of a grass-leaf 129.
Liliaceæ, the Lily Family [110.
Lilium 110.
Limb — the expanded part of a petal or sepal.
Lime 15.
Lineæ 15.
Linear — very narrow with the two sides nearly parallel 129. 152.
Linum 15.
Little Millet 132. [8.
Lobe — a division of a leaf
Lodicule — a scale at the base of a grass-flower 131.
Loranthaceæ, the Mistletoe Family 95.
Loranthus 95.
Lotus 1.
Luffa 46.
Lycopersicum 68.
Lyrate — pinnatifid with large terminal lobe and smaller ones towards the petiole 8.
Madar 61.
Maidenhair Fern 136.
Maize 132.
Malvaceæ, the Mallow Family 10.
Mangifera 19.
Mango 19.
Mango Family 19.
Mangrove Family 40.
Manihot 92.
Manilla Hemp 17
Maranta 123.
Margins of leaves 152.
Margosa tree 18.
Marking-nut 24.
Mechanical contrivances for the dispersion of seeds 17. 187.
Melia 18.
Melon 46.
Mexican Poppy 7. [128.
Midrib of Banana leaf
Milk Hedge 91.
Milkweed Family 61.
Milky juice in leaves and stems 5. 61.
Mimosa 35. 36.
Mimoseæ 35.
Minute structure of a plant 148.
Mistletoe 95.
Monochlamydeous — having only one floral envelope 83. 174.
Monocotyledon — a plant which is furnished with one seed-leaf 98. 171.
Monœcious — with staminate and pistillate flowers on the same plant 46. 174.
Morinda 51.
Morus 88.
Moss Family 139.
Mould 144.
Mucuna 184.
Mulberry 88.
Musa 123.
Musci 139.
Mushroom Family 142.
Mussænda 50. 180.

Mustard 8.
Mycelium — the underground part of fungi spreading like a network 143.
Myrtaceæ, the Myrtle Family 39.
Nectary — a honey-secreting gland 22.
Neem tree 18.
Nelumbium 4.
Nerium 60.
Nerves — the veins of a leaf 80. 151.
Nettle Family 83.
Nicotiana 67.
Nicotine 68. [57.
Night-flowering blossoms
Nightshade Family 64.
Nitrogen — a gas, one of constituents of the atmosphere 146.
Nocturnal position of leaves 32. 156.
Node — the part of a stem from which the leaf springs 169.
Nut — a kind of hard, dry, one-seeded fruit 186.
Nyctanthes 57.
Nymphæa 1.
Nymphæaceæ 1.
Oats 132.
Oblong — leaves broader than linear 152.
Ocimum 78.
Oils and fats in plants 8. 103. 163.
Oleaceæ 57.
Oleander 60.
Olive Family 57.
Olive tree 57.
Onion 111.
Opium Poppy 4.
Opposite leaves 153.
Opuntia 41.
Orange 15.
Orange Family 14.
Orchideæ, the Orchid Family 117.
Organic structure of plants 150.
Oryza 125.
Ovary — the hollow part of a pistil that bears the ovules 177.
Ovate — having the shape of an egg 152.
Ovule — a young seed 177. 183.
Oxalis 158.
Oxygen — a gas, one of the constituents of the atmosphere 159. 163.
Pagoda tree 60.
Palisade tissue 161.
Palmaceæ 98.
Palmate — having the shape of a hand 90.
Palm Family 98.
Palmyra palm 104.
Pancratium 116.
Pandanus 109.
Panicle — a raceme in which each pedicel branches again 181.
Panicum 132.
Papaver 4.
Papaveraceæ, the Poppy Family 4.
Papaw tree 47.
Papilionaceæ, the Pea-flower tribe 25.
Papilionaceous — butterfly-shaped 175.
Pappus — a light, hairy development from the calyx of a plant 53.
Parasite — a plant growing upon and deriving nourishment from another plant 95. 147. 168.
Passifloreæ 46.
Passion-flower 46.
Pea 25.
Peach 39.
Pear 39.
Pedaliaceæ, the Sesamum Family 73.
Pedicel — the stalk of each single flower of a two- or more-flowered inflorescence 181. [181.
Peduncle — a flower-stalk
Peepul 86.
Peltate — attached within the margin 89. 151.
Pepper 96; Spanish P. = Chilli 68; black and white P. 96.
Pepper Family 96.
Perennial — a plant that lives for an indefinite period 3. 169.
Perianth — a floral envelope, in which the calyx cannot be distinguished from the corolla, though both are present 86. 175.
Pericarp — the cover of a fruit of any kind 183.
Periwinkle 58.
Petal — one of the parts of a corolla 175.
Petiole — the stalk of a leaf 20. 151.
Phanerogamæ — flowering plants 1.
Phaseolus 31.
Phœnix 106.
Phyllanthus 91

Physalis 68.
Pine Family 135.
Pine-apple 116.
Pinnæ — the leaflets of a pinnate leaf 137.
Pinnate — divided into a number of pairs of leaflets 153.
Pinnatifid — divided in a pinnated manner nearly down to the midrib 153.
Piper 96.
Piperaceæ, the Pepper Family 96.
Pistia 109.
Pistil — the female part of a flower consisting of ovary, style, and stigma 177.
Pisum 25.
Pith — the soft tissue in the centre of an exogenous stem 76. 170.
Placenta — the part of the ovary to which the ovules are attached 178. 184.
Plantain tree 123.
Plum 39.
Plumieria 60.
Plumule — the bud of a stem in the embryo 184.
Pod — a general term applied to various seed-vessels, such as legumes, siliques, follicles, etc.
Poinciana 34.
Pollen — the powder contained in an anther 176.
Pollination — the act of conveying the pollen from the stamen to the stigma 178.
Polytrichum 140.
Pomegranate 40.
Poppy 4.
Portia tree 11.
Potato 64.
Prevention of excessive transpiration 157.
Prickles — sharply pointed projections originating from the bark 37.
Prickly Pear 41. 42.
Proboscis — the feeling and feeding organ of an insect 119.
Protoplasm — a substance which forms the essential part of all living cells, and to which all life-growth is due 149.
Psidium 39.
Pudding Pipe tree 34.
Pulp — the soft, succulent part of a fleshy fruit 23.
Pummelo 15.
Pumpkin 46.
Punica 40.
Purging Nut 92.
Quadrangular — four-cornered 76.
Quinine — an alkaloid extracted from the Cinchona tree 50.
Raceme — like a spike, but with stalked flowers 181.
Radical — arising from the crown of the root.
Radicle — that part of the embryo which becomes the root 184.
Radish 9. 168.
Ragi 132.
Rape 8. 10.
Raphanus 9.
Raspberry 39.
Rattan Cane 106.
Receptacle — the top of the stalk bearing the parts of a flower 53.
Red hue of young leaves 38. 85. 93. 162.
Redwood tree 36.
Reniform — kidney-shaped 152.
Reproductive organs 176.
Resin — a secretion from certain trees which hardens on exposure 5. 35.
Respiration — breathing 163.
Rhizome — a horizontal stem, more or less underground 121. 173.
Rhizophoreæ, the Mangrove Family 40.
Rice 125.
Ricinus 89.
Root 165.
Root-bacteria 29. 146.
Root-cap — a loose covering that protects the tip of the growing root 167.
Root-hairs — delicate hairs found on the young root 165.
Root-nodules 28. 146.
Root-stock — the same as rhizome 121.
Rosaceæ, the Rose Family 36.
Rose 36.
Rosewood 31.
Rotation of crops 167.
Rubiaceæ, the Coffee Family 47.
Rutaceæ, the Citron and Orange Family 14.
Saccharum 132.
Sacred Lotus 4.
Safflower 56.
Sago Palm 106.

Salvia 77.
Sanseviera 17.
Sap ascending and descending the tree 170.
Saprophyte — a plant which lives on decaying organic matter 143.
Sapwood — the newly formed wood of exogens in which the sap rises 79. 170.
Sarsaparilla 63.
Scale — a rudimentary leaf.
Scape — the flowering leafless stem of a plant 115. 181.
Scents of flowers 182.
Schizomycetes 144.
Scitamineæ, the Ginger and Banana Family 121.
Screw Pine 109.
Sea Holly 74.
Seed 25. 126. 184.
Seed-leaves 25. 184.
Semecarpus 24.
Sensitive plant 36.
Sepals — the leaves of the calyx 174.
Serrate — toothed like the edge of a saw 152.
Sesamum 73.
Sesbania 49.
Sessile — attached to something without a stalk 151.
Shankapushpa 31.
Shining surface of leaves 21. 158. 162.
Shoeflower 11.
Shrub — a plant with several permanent, woody stems dividing from the bottom 169.
Silex, Silica 106. 130.
Silique — the two-valved pod of Crucifers 9. 185.
Silk Cotton tree 11.
Simple leaf 153.
Sinuate — having large, blunt lobes 153.
Sleeping leaves 33.
Smut 144.
Soapnut Acacia 36.
Solanaceæ 64.
Solanum 64.
Sonchus 53.
Sonneratia 168.
Sorghum 132.
Sow-thistle 53.
Spadix — a succulent spike, as in the Aroideæ 108.
Spanish Pepper = Chilli 67.
Spathe — a large, coloured bract often enclosing a spadix 108. 124.
Species 190.
Sphæranthus 56.
Spike — an inflorescence in which the flowers are sessile on their axis 181.
Spine — sharply pointed projections originating from the wood 37. 170.
Spiral arrangement of leaves 52. 154.
Spiral vessels — having a spiral fibre enclosed 123.
Spondias 24.
Spongy tissue of leaves [161.
Sporangium — the spore-case of some of the flowerless plants 137.
Spores — the reproductive germ of flowerless plants 141.
Spur — a projecting appendage of a sepal or a petal 17. 119.
Spurge Family 89.
Stamen — the fertilizing or male organ of a flower, consisting of filament and anther 176.
Standard — the upper single petal of a papilionaceous flower 30.
Starch — colourless grains, a product of assimilation in the leaf 162.
Stem 168.
Sterculiaceæ 14.
Sterile — not fertile 55. 124.
Sticky sap 42.
Stigma — the upper end of the style, which receives the pollen 177.
Stipules — small outgrowths at the base of the leaf-stalks or leaves 28. 37. 84.
Stomata — minute pores in the skin of the leaf or green stem 154. 162.
Strawberry 39.
Style — the narrowed upper end of a carpellary leaf, bearing the stigma 177.
Succulent — fleshy; succulent plants 17. 42. 118. 158.
Sugar 133. 163.
Sugarcane 132.
Sundew 72.
Sunflower 51.
Sunn Hemp 17. 31. 147.
Superior ovary — when ovary wholly free from the calyx-tube 110. 178.

Sweet Basil 78.
Sweet Potato 68.
Sympetalous plants — plants having their petals united 47. 175.
Tabernæmontana 60.
Talipot 104.
Tamarind 34.
Tannin — a substance widely diffused through the leaves and stems of plants, of an astringent character 35.
Taproot 9. 165.
Teak 78.
Tea shrub 13.
Tectona 78.
Tendril—a slender spiral shoot of a plant that winds round another body for the purpose of support 28. 45. 169.
Ternstrœmiaceæ, the Tea Family 13.
Testa—the skin of the seed 25. 184.
Theine 14.
Theobroma 14.
Thespesia 11.
Thornapple 68.
Til 73.
Tiliaceæ 14.
Tissue—a group of cells having a common origin.
Toadstool 142.
Tobacco 67.
Tomato 68.
Transpiration—the giving off of water-vapour from the surface of leaves and stems 154.
Tree—a perennial plant having a woody trunk of considerable size with branches 169.
Tree Cotton 10.
Tree Ferns 139.
Trifoliate — having three leaflets 32. 153.
Triticum 131.
Tube—the part of a flower where the bases of the sepals, petals, or stamens are united.
Tuber—a fleshy underground stem 64. 117. 173.
Tubular florets 53.
Tulasi 78.
Tumbe 74.
Turmeric 123.
Twiners 34. 169.
Umbel—an inflorescence whose branches all radiate from one common point and reach about the same level 61. 182.
Unona (Uvaria) 183.
Unisexual—with stamens only, or with pistil only 46 97. 174.
Urticaceæ, the Nettle and Fig Family 83.
Utricularia 70.
Valve — one of the parts into which any opening body divides, as of a capsule 185.
Vanda 121.
Vanilla 121.
Vascular plants — plants consisting of cells and vessels 140.
Veins of leaves 80. 152.
Verbenaceæ, the Verbena Family 78.
Vernonia 55.
Vessel — a canal or tube formed by various cells, in which the sap is contained and conveyed 149.
Vinca 58.
Vine 18.
Viscum 95.
Vishṇukrānti 64.
Vitex 81.
Vitis 18.
Volatile oil 8.
Water as a means of dispersing seeds 188.
Water Lily 164
Water Melon 46.
Wheat 131.
Whorl—a ring of leaves on the same plane 154. 174.
White Lily 111.
Wild Asparagus 111. 168. 170.
Wild Date Palm 106.
Wild Liquorice 31.
Wind as an agent of pollination 183; — as a means for the dispersion of seeds 188.
Wine 18.
Wing—one of the petals of a papilionaceous flower 30.
Wood 19. 79. 170.
Zea 132.
Zephyr Flower 116.
Zephyranthes 116.
Zingiber 121.
Zinnia 56.

CORRECTIONS

Page 20, line 5: *read* kinds *for* kind.'
„ 25, l. 12: *read* fig. 19, *a for* fig. 17, *a*.
„ 25, l. 13: *read* fig. 19, *c for* fig. 17, *c*.
„ 31, l. 14: *read* to the edges of the seam *for* to the seam.
„ 31, l. 11 from the bottom: *read* Dolichos biflorus *for* Dolichos uniflorus.
„ 33, l. 15 from the bottom: *omit* it.
„ 34, l. 18: *add* or Indian Laburnum *after* Pudding Pipe Tree.
„ 41, l. 18: *put a comma after* ripening.
„ 41, l. 20: „ „ „ germinate.
„ 44, l. 2: *read* must *for* should.
„ 46, l. 3: *omit* a *before* staminate.
„ 59, l. 15: *read* down *for* downs.
„ 64, l. 1: *read* Needle-creeper *for* Indian Forget-me-not.
„ 66, l. 12 from the bottom: *read* pinnæ *for* pinnates.
„ 71, l. 3 from the bottom: *add after the parenthesis* though it belongs to another Order.
„ 73, l. 14: *read* corolla *for* petal.
„ 75, last line: *read* contrast it with Cactus *for* contrast it to Cactus.
„ 80, l. 18: *read* remained *for* should remain.
„ 81, l. 10 and l. 14: *read* corolla *for* petal.
„ 85, l. 14: *read* were joined *for* are joined.
„ 88, last line: *read* on the outside *for* at the outside.
„ 92, l. 7: *read* purgative *for* laxative.
„ 95, l. 3: *read* not possibly *for* impossibly.
„ 100, l. 13: *omit* for *after* plainly seen.
„ 109, l. 14: *read* Pandanus *for* Pandamus.
„ 115, l. 12: *read* grows *for* grow.
„ 125, l. 8 from the bottom: *add* or culm *after* haulm.
„ 132, l. 2: *read* making *for* baking.
„ 178, l. 11: *read* free from the calyx *for* placed above the calyx.
„ 178, l. 13: *add* lobes of the *before* calyx.
„ 181, l. 7: *read* are *for* is.
„ 183, l. 7 from the bottom: *read* Uvaria *for* Unona.

The numbers of Plates mentioned in the text of this book refer to the

MANGALORE SERIES

OF

COLOURED PICTURES OF INDIAN PLANTS AND TREES

FOR OBJECT LESSONS

Size: 14 × 16 inches.

These Pictures have been drawn from nature and contain perfectly coloured designs of the grown-up plants as well as of their leaves, blossom, fruit, seeds, etc., some of them in considerably enlarged size. The following are

Ready for Sale:

Acacia, Banyan, Chilli and Tomato, Chocolate, Cinnamon, Citron, Cocoanut (double sheet), Coffee, Cotton, Indigo, Lotus, Maize and Sugarcane, Plantain, Potato, Radish and Rape, Rice and Wheat, Tea, Tobacco.

Under Preparation:

Jack, Mango, Palmyra, Tulasi.—Regular Flowers, Irregular Flowers, Roots and Stems, Fruits.

Prices:

Single sheet, 14 × 16 inches,	unmounted	each	As. 3/-.
Do.	mounted on cloth, with eyelets	„	„ 6/-.
Double sheet, 28 × 16 inches, (Cocoanut),	unmounted	„	„ 8/-.
Do.	mounted on cloth, with eyelets	„	Re. 1.-.

Apply to the Publishers:

BASEL MISSION BOOK AND TRACT DEPOSITORY,

MANGALORE (South Canara).

Other Publications:

Picture Books, Dy. 12°, containing coloured pictures of the following Indian Plants and Trees: Rice, Plantain, Groundnut, Areca, Mango, Jola (Great Millet), Cocoanut, Tamarind, Sugarcane, Castor-oil Plant, Brinjal, and Ragi. Price As. 3/6.

Five Hundred Indian Plants, their use in Medicine and the Arts, in Canarese, Dy. 8° . . . . . Price Rs. 1. 8.

Coloured Pictures of Animals, for Object Lessons, size 14×16 inches:

Lion, Tiger, Cheetah, Bear, Wolf, Fox, Zebra, Giraffe, Elephant, Rhinoceros, Bison, Camel, Stag, Deer, Ape, Hedgehog, Rabbit, Hare, Squirrel, Crocodile, Frog, Horse, Bullock, Cow, Buffalo, Pig, Sheep, Donkey, Goat, Dog, Cat, Mouse, Ostrich, Stork, Peacock, Turkey, Goose, Duck, Fowl, Parrot, Dove, Owl, Eagle, Crow, Crawfish, Walrus.

Price per unmounted copy . . . . . As. 3/-.
copy mounted on cloth with four eyelets „ 6/-.

Picture Books, Dy. 12°, containing coloured Pictures of Animals:

No. 1: Cow, Horse, Bullock, Deer, Lion, Tiger, Elephant, Camel.

No. 2: Crocodile, Zebra, Kangaroo, Hyena, Monkey, Rhinoceros, Cobra, Bear, Wild Boar, Hippopotamus, Dog, Scorpion, Centipede.

No. 3: Owl, Crow, Peacock, Hawk, Duck, Heron, Swallow, Flamingo, Crane, Dove, Ostrich, Swan, Fowl, Tailor-bird, Stork, Pelican, Lapwing, Parrot, Eagle, Turkey.

New Series: Cow, Sheep, Dog, Parrot, Crow, Fo bra, Monkey, Cat, Elephant, Horse.

Price of each As. 2/6.

Full Catalogue on application to

BASEL MISSION BOOK AND TRACT DEPOSITORY,
MANGALORE (South Canara).

Celestial Globes

sizes, with strai[illegible] or with [illegible]

Unbreakable Slate Globes

For drawing the outlines of the Earth, with cl[illegible]
of the lines of longitude and latitude.

Relief Terrestrial Globes

Showing at a glance both the Physical features and Political divisions of the Earth.

Orreries and Armillary Spheres

For illustrating the motions of the Earth and Planets round the Su[illegible] and showing the relative positions of the principal circles of the celestial sphere.

Relief Wall Maps

Painted in oil colours, nicely framed.

HIRT'S

Principal Formations of the Surface of the Earth

Printed in many colours with explanatory text.

Dr. Bock's Plastic Anatomical Models

Made of Gypsum and painted from nature in Oil colours.

Clay Models of Animals and Fruits

For Object Lessons

For full Price-List apply to

BASEL MISSION BOOK AND TRACT DEPOSITORY,
MANGALORE